

**Afghanistan National Army  
ANA 7-10 MTP**

**MISSION TRAINING PLAN  
FOR THE  
INFANTRY RIFLE COMPANY**

1 February 2006

# **MISSION TRAINING PLAN FOR THE INFANTRY RIFLE COMPANY**

## **CONTENTS**

	<b>Page</b>
Preface .....	i
 <b>CHAPTER 1. UNIT TRAINING</b>	
1-1. General.....	1-1
1-2. Supporting Material .....	1-1
1-3. Mission Training Plan Echelon Relationship.....	1-1
1-4. Contents.....	1-1
1-5. Mission and Tasks.....	1-2
1-6. Principles of Training .....	1-2
1-7. Training Strategy .....	1-3
1-8. Conducting Training.....	1-4

1-9.	Force Protection (Safety).....	1-7
1-10.	Environmental Protection.....	1-8
1-11.	Evaluation.....	1-9

**CHAPTER 2. TRAINING MATRIXES**

2-1.	General.....	2-1
2-2.	Mission to Collective Tasks Matrix.....	2-1
2-3.	Supporting References to Collective Tasks Matrix .....	2-10
2-4.	Individual Task to Collective Task Matrix.....	2-134

**CHAPTER 3. MISSION OUTLINES**

3-1.	General.....	3-1
3-2.	Relationship of Mission Outlines to Training Matrixes.....	3-1
3-3.	Mission Outline Preparation.....	3-1
3-4.	Mission Outline Examples.....	3-2

**CHAPTER 4. TRAINING EXERCISE**

4-1.	General.....	4-1
4-2.	FTX.....	4-1
4-3.	STX.....	4-2

4-4. Planning Exercises.....	4-2
6-1. General.....	6-1
6-2. Preparing the Evaluation.....	6-1
6-3. Selecting and Training Observers and or Controllers.....	6-5
6-4. Documentation.....	6-6
6-5. Selecting and Training Opposing Force.....	6-8
6-6. Conducting the Evaluation.....	6-9
6-7. Conducting the After Action Review.....	6-11
<b>APPENDIX A. COMBINED ARMS TRAINING STRATEGY.....</b>	<b>A-1</b>
<b>GLOSSARY.....</b>	<b>Glossary-1</b>
<b>REFERENCES.....</b>	<b>References-1</b>
<b>APPENDIX B. EXERCISE OPERATION ORDERS.....</b>	<b>B-1</b>
<b>APPENDIX C. ENEMY ANALYSIS.....</b>	<b>C-1</b>
<b>CHAPTER 5. TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINES</b>	
<b>CHAPTER 6. EXTERNAL EVALUATION</b>	

## PREFACE

This mission training plan (MTP) is designed for the Infantry rifle company. This MTP provides company commanders with a descriptive, mission-oriented training program to train their units to perform their critical wartime missions. Although a unit's missions and deployment assignments impact on the commander's final set of training priorities, the tasks described herein are the primary ones the unit must be able to execute with proficiency. The unit is expected to train all tasks to standard. Standards for training may be made more difficult but may not be lowered.

The proponent and preparing agency for this publication is Headquarters, Kabul Military Training Center, Kabul, Afghanistan. Recommendations for changes to this document should be sent to them.

**Unless otherwise stated, masculine nouns and pronouns do refer exclusively to men.**

## CHAPTER 1

### UNIT TRAINING

1-1. General. This MTP provides the infantry company commander with a tactical training and evaluation program for the company. It also provides guidance on how to train, as well as the key missions on which to train. The specific details of the training program depend on many factors, including:

- a. The unit's Mission Essential Task List (METL).
- b. Training directives and guidance established by the chain of command.
- c. Training priorities for the platoon and squad.
- d. Training resources and areas available.

1-2. Supporting Material. This MTP describes a critical wartime mission-oriented company training program, which is part of the battalion's training program. The battalion's training program consists of the battalion-level MTP (ARTEP 7-20-MTP) and also includes MTPs, drills, soldier tasks, and leader tasks.

- a. Mission training plans. MTPs for the infantry rifle platoon and squad (ARTEP 7-8-MTP) and for the mortar platoon, section, and squad (ARTEP 7-90-MTP) are used to train the company.
- b. Infantry drills (ARTEP 7-8-Drill). Drills are used by the platoon and squad leaders to train skills that must be sustained by the company and platoon.
- c. Soldier tasks. Soldier's manuals for the appropriate MOS and skill levels are used to train individual tasks.
- d. Leader tasks. The MQS II manual is used to train the company commander.

1-3. Definitions. The terms mission and operation are used often throughout this manual. These terms mean different things and each must be understood.

a. A mission and an operation are defined as follows:

(1) A mission is defined as "The primary task assigned to an individual, unit, or force. It usually tells the unit what to do, when to do it, where to do it and the reason for doing it, but usually doesn't tell the unit how to do it."

(2) An operation is defined as "A military action in the larger sense, intended to gain the objectives of a battle or campaign."

b. Examples of infantry operations are movement to contact (offensive), attack (offensive), delay (retrograde), and defend (defensive). These operations become a mission when the five elements of who, what, when, where, and why are employed. For example, an attack operation becomes a mission when situation-specific information is provided, such as Company A attacks to seize Objective BLUE vicinity LA059699 NLT 231200Dec03 to prevent the enemy from reinforcing Objective RED.

1-4. Contents. This MTP is organized into six chapters.

a. Chapter 1, Unit Training, outlines the organization of this MTP and discusses collective training concepts. It explains how to use this MTP in establishing an effective training program.

b. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes, shows the relationship between operations and collective tasks.

c. Chapter 3, Operation Outlines, describes the use of the MTP for developing company training plans. It also presents a graphic portrayal of the relationship between critical operations and collective tasks inherent to those operations.

d. Chapter 4, Training Exercises, consists of field training exercises (FTXs) and situational training exercises (STXs) that combine with leader training activities to aid in training the company's critical operations and tasks. FTXs and STXs provide training information and a scenario to aid in sustaining the training of a key mission. It may also serve as part of an internal or external evaluation of the company executing the mission in a tactical setting.

e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines, provides the company with tasks, conditions, standards, and

performance measures that are needed to train their critical operations. These training criteria orient on the levels of collective training executed by the company. Each T&EO is a part of one or more critical operations and, in various combinations, make up larger training exercises such as the FTXs and STXs in Chapter 4.

f. Chapter 6, External Evaluation, provides instructions for the planning, preparation, and execution of an external evaluation.

1-5. Operations and Tasks. The company's critical wartime operations are movement to contact, attack, raid, ambush, reconnaissance and security, defend, and retrograde. Each operation includes major activities that the company must execute to accomplish its mission. It also includes the tasks that each platoons, squads, and soldiers must perform. Each of these tasks requires training.

a. Company tasks may be trained individually or jointly. They must be oriented on the training criteria provided in the T&EOs and in ARTEP 7-8-Drill. Drills and collective task T&EOs can be linked through a logical, tactical scenario to form an STX. Although an STX is mission-oriented, it will not, by itself, result in training to mission proficiency. Various combinations of STXs can be used in developing an FTX for the company. Several STXs can be used for an external evaluation (designed by brigade headquarters) of a company's ability to perform multiple missions under stress in a realistic environment.

b. Platoon and squad tasks are trained the same way as described above. However, the platoon leader and squad leader must also train the drills provided in ARTEP 7-8-Drill.

c. Leader tasks are individual tasks trained by using:

- o Tactical exercises without troops (TEWT).
- o Battle simulations.
- o Execution of platoon and company missions.

o Officer and or NCO professional development training based on MQS/STP tasks.

d. Individual tasks are mastered through training to standards outlined in MQS and STP manuals.

1-6. Training Principles. These principles should be followed in all training.

a. Train as a combined arms team. ANA doctrine requires a strong focus on teamwork. When committed to battle, each unit must be prepared to fight as a team with other units such as artillery, engineers, airplanes, logistics units and police without additional training. Leaders must regularly train with these other units in order to accomplish their missions successfully.

b. Train as you plan to fight. The goal of all training is to make that training as similar to combat as possible. Every effort must be made to attain this difficult goal. Within the confines of safety and common sense, leaders must accept less than perfect results initially and demand realism in training. They must integrate such realistic conditions as smoke, noise, darkness, battlefield debris, loss of key leaders, and bad weather.

c. Use appropriate doctrine. All soldiers must be trained using the appropriate training doctrine. If the soldiers are all trained by the same doctrine, they will know how to react in recurring situations and soldiers newly assigned to the unit will learn their jobs quicker. Leaders must insure that the proper mission training plans, drill books, soldier's manuals, regulations, and other training and doctrinal publications are used to plan, conduct and evaluate the training.

d. Use performance-oriented training. Soldiers learn best by doing, using a hands-on approach. Leaders are responsible for developing and executing a training strategy that allows the soldier to learn by actually doing the tasks.

e. Train to challenge. Tough, realistic, and intellectually and physically challenging training excites and motivates soldiers and leaders. It builds competence and confidence by developing and honing skills. Challenging training inspires excellence by fostering initiative, enthusiasm, and eagerness to learn.

f. Train to sustain proficiency. Once individuals and units have trained to the required standard, leaders must structure collective and individual training plans to insure they can continue to meet the standard. MTPs and individual training programs are tools to help achieve and sustain collective and individual proficiency.

g. Train using multi-echelon techniques. Commanders must try to simultaneously train individuals, leaders, and platoons/squads at each echelon in the company.

h. Train to maintain. Maintenance is a vital part of every training program. Maintenance training designed to keep equipment working is as important to soldiers as their

knowing how to use the equipment. Soldiers and leaders are responsible for insuring that equipment is always working.

i. Make company commanders the primary trainers. They are responsible for the training and performance of their soldiers. They should approve all training before it's conducted and they should be present and supervising training while it's being conducted.

1-7. Training Strategy. The infantry company commander's training strategy consists should consist of three separate training strategies. When integrated with the training tasks in the MTP, they form a comprehensive and focused training strategy that allows the company to train to standard. The elements of the infantry company training strategy are maneuver, gunnery, and soldier.

a. Maneuver strategy. This strategy covers how often (called training frequency) that the company conducts maneuver training such as battle drills, STX's and FTX's during the course of a training year. The amount of time that the commander devotes to maneuver training depends on the amount of time and resources available.

b. Gunnery strategy. This strategy covers how often that the company conducts live fires with its assigned weapons. This includes both individual weapons such as pistols and rifles, and crew-served weapons such as machine guns and mortars. The amount of time that the commander devotes to maneuver training depends on the amount of time and resources, especially ammunition and ranges, available.

c. Soldier strategy. The soldier strategy provides an annual plan for training and maintaining skills at the individual level and lists the resources required to train the soldier.

d. Training Steps of Crawl, Walk, Run. Just as a child must first learn to crawl before they can walk and walk before they can run, soldiers and units must do the same with their tasks and missions. The commander's training strategy must train the simplest tasks to standard first (crawl), then the more difficult tasks (walk), then the most difficult tasks and missions (run). It is important that the commander insure that each training step be trained to standard before progressing to the next step.

1-8. Conduct of Training. This MTP aids in planning, preparing, and conducting company training.

a. The battalion commander assigns missions and tasks to the company based on his Mission Essential Task List (METL) and his brigade commander's training guidance. Trainers must plan and execute company training in support

of this guidance.

b. The Operation Outlines in Chapter 3 must support the battalion commander's guidance. Most likely they will need to be changed slightly. These changes should be based upon the company commander's assessment of Mission, Enemy, Terrain, Time, and Troops available (METT-T).

c. The company commander must determine the priority of all tasks. The commander will never have enough time to train all tasks to standard so he must focus on the most important tasks (Mission Essential Tasks) and individual soldier skills. The company commander should hold weekly training meetings with his first sergeant, platoon leaders, and platoon sergeants in order to decide what these important training tasks are.

d. Training tasks must be written into the training schedule. The following procedures are used to do this:

(1) List the tasks in the priority and frequency they need to be trained.

(2) Determine the required training time.

(3) Determine the best procedure for using multi-echelon training for the best effect.

(4) Determine the training location(s).

(5) Determine the training responsibilities (who will be responsible for what training).

(6) Determine the time needed for training.

(7) Determine the best training method.

(8) Determine the resources needed to support the training.

e. The company commander provides this training schedule to his battalion commander. Once the battalion commander has approved it, he adds it to the battalion training schedule.

f. Leaders must keep subordinate leaders informed of training they are conducting. Standards must be rigidly enforced. If they are not, the company and soldiers will suffer.

1-9. Battle Focus. Battle focus derives peacetime training requirements from wartime missions. It guides the planning, execution, and assessment of the company's training program

to ensure the company trains as it will fight. Battle focus is critical throughout the entire training process. It is used by commanders to allocate resources for training based on wartime mission requirements. It helps the commander recognize that a company cannot attain proficiency to standard on every task due to time or resource constraints. A successful training program is achievable, however, by narrowing the focus to a reduced number of vital tasks that are essential to mission accomplishment.

1-10. Safety. A well-trained company is normally accident-free, although accidents can occur through no fault of the soldier or equipment operator. Most accidents result from unsafe acts of untrained, unsupervised, or complacent soldiers or leaders.

a. Effective training occurs when soldiers are confident in their abilities to perform their tasks to standard, including appropriate safety standards. Leaders must ensure that all soldiers know and follow company safety Standard Operating Procedures (SOPs) during all training events. Leaders should make on-the-spot corrections when an unsafe act is observed.

b. Using safety checklists will greatly enhance the overall safety practices of soldiers during training.

c. Leaders must conduct a risk assessment of all planned training. Commanders must be especially careful when moderate-or high-risk training is conducted.

1-11. Evaluation. Training and Evaluation Outlines (T&Eos) in Chapter 5 list the standards that the company must meet for each of its tasks. This is probably the most important chapter in this manual.

a. Evaluations can be internal or external. Internal evaluations are those where the evaluators are members of the unit being trained. For example, the company commander evaluating his company while they train on a company task is an internal evaluation. External evaluations are those where the evaluators come from outside the unit. External evaluations are formal, meaning that the evaluations are normally done in writing, and are usually conducted by the headquarters two levels above the company.

b. A critical weakness in training is the failure to evaluate each task every time it is performed. Simultaneous training and evaluation are the basis for the ARTEP concept. Every training exercise provides the potential for evaluation, and every evaluation is a training session. To optimize training, the company commander must restate to the trainers and leaders the need for continuous training evaluation.

c. Leaders should emphasize direct, on-the-spot evaluations. Correcting poor performance during individual or small-group training is easy to do. Outside evaluators usually make this difficult to do during higher-level exercises. Leaders should plan After Action Reviews (AARs) at frequent and logical intervals during exercises. This allows the company commander to correct poor performance while they are still fresh in everyone's mind and prevents the reinforcement of bad habits.

d. Chapter 6 of this manual provides detailed instructions for conducting an AAR and detailed guidance on coaching and evaluating the individual soldiers and units during training.

1-12. Feedback. We request your recommendations for improvement of this manual. Feedback will ensure that this ARTEP MTP answers the training needs of companies in the field. Send your written comments to the address listed in the preface.

## CHAPTER 2 TRAINING MATRIXES

2-1. General. This chapter provides training matrixes that help the company commander in near-term, short-range, and long-range, training plans and schedules. The matrixes complement the battalion training management plan. They provide an organized set of relationships that make the leader's job easier.

a. As discussed in Chapter 1, company proficiency requires rifle and mortar platoons trained to the standards of ARTEP 7-8-MTP.

b. Once the platoon collective tasks in ARTEP 7-8 MTP have been trained to standard, they must be integrated and sustained through training the company collective training tasks. These collective tasks are in Chapter 5 of this manual as training and evaluation outlines.

c. When the company collective tasks are trained to standard, they are integrated and sustained through mission-oriented training exercises, such as STXs and FTXs.

d. The company collective tasks, selected by the company commander to make up an STX, are linked by leader command and control tasks.

e. STXs in various combinations can be used in developing an FTX. FTXs are normally trained at company or higher level.

2-2. Battlefield Operating Systems. The Battlefield Operating Systems (BOS) are functions of the combined arms force. (The T&EOs in Chapter 5 are organized according to BOS). The operating systems are defined as follows:

a. Intelligence. This is knowledge of the enemy, weather, and terrain features required by a commander to plan and conduct combat operations. The task Perform Reconnaissance is listed under this operating system.

2-1  
ARTEP 7-10-MTP

b. Maneuver. This is the act of moving forces on the battlefield, to achieve a position of advantage over the enemy. Examples include Move Tactically and Perform Linkup.

c. Fire support. This entails generating and applying indirect fire weapons (mortars and artillery) to support

maneuver. The task Employ Fire Support is listed under this operating system.

d. Mobility and Survivability. This includes tasks that allow the company the freedom to move and maneuver, with the protection necessary they need to fulfill their primary mission. Example T&EOs are Maintain Operation Security.

e. Air Defense. This includes all measures taken to nullify or reduce the effectiveness of hostile aircraft attack. Defend Against Air Attack is an example of this task.

f. Combat Service Support. This includes tasks performed by the company to ensure that the company can provide itself the food, water, fuel, ammunition, and replacement soldiers that it needs. The task Treat and Evacuate Casualties is listed under this operating system.

g. Command and Control (C2). This refers to the orders that commanders give their units in order to control their units' actions and accomplish the mission. It also includes the planning and coordination necessary to prepare those orders and the equipment, such as radios, that the commander uses to send the orders to his subordinates. The task Develop and Communicate a Plan is listed under this operating system.

2-2  
ARTEP 7-10-MTP

### 2-3. Operation-to-Collective Task Matrix.

a. Figure 2-1 reflects the relationship of T&EOs to company operations. It illustrates the seven company critical wartime operations across the top and supporting T&EOs down the side. An "X" in a column indicates a T&EO that supports the operation at the top of that column. Where more than one X appears in a row, the X indicates that the T&EO supports more than one operation. Therefore, in addition to looking down a column to see which T&EOs support a particular operation, the commander should look across a row to see which T&EOs support more than one operation.

b. This matrix presents the full range of collective

tasks. The company commander, however, need not train every task under an operation to fully support a specific mission. He should select important tasks according to his battalion commander's guidance, his company battle focus, the training status of his company, resources available, METT-T analysis, and other company requirements.

OPERATIONS							
COLLECTIVE TASKS	MTC	ATK	RAID	AMB	R&S	DEF	BOS
Perform Reconnaissance 7-2-1002	X	X	X	X	X	X	Intel
Perform Screen/Guard 7-2-1006	X	X			X	X	Intel
Perform Movement to Contact 7-2-1101	X						Man
Take Action on Contact 7-2-1107	X	X	X		X		Man
Execute Attack 7-2-1100		X					Man
Perform Overwatch/ Support by Fire 7-2-1108	X	X	X			X	Man
Perform Raid 7-2-1102			X				Man
Withdraw under Enemy Pressure 7-2-1121							Man
Withdraw Not under Enemy Pressure 7-2-1120							Man

**Figure 2-1: Operation to Collective Task Matrix**

OPERATIONS							
COLLECTIVE TASKS	MTC	ATK	RAID	AMB	R&S	DEF	BOS
Perform Delay 7-2-1119							Man
Execute Assault 7-2-1103	X	X	X	X		X	Man
Perform Airborne Assault 7-2-1127	X	X	X	X	X	X	Man
Break-Out from Encirclement 7-2-1129						X	Man
Occupy Assembly Area 7-2-1136	X	X	X	X	X	X	Man
Perform Stay-Behind Operations 7-2-1116			X	X	X	X	Man
Perform Ambush 7-2-1106				X	X	X	Man
Execute Defense 7-2-1115						X	Man
Perform Relief Operations 7-2-1124						X	Man
Move Tactically 7-2-1134	X	X	X	X	X		Man
Perform Air Assault	X	X	X	X	X	X	Man

7-2-1126								
Perform Tactical Road March 7-2-1123	X	X				X		Man
Perform Link-Up 7-2-1128	X	X	X	X	X	X		Man
Perform Operations with Armored Vehicles 7-2-1140	X	X	X	X	X	X		Man
Perform Passage of Lines 7-2-1125	X	X	X	X	X	X		Man
Perform Infiltration/Exfiltration 7-2-1137	X	X	X	X	X	X		Man
Execute an Assault (MOUT) 7-2-1109	X	X	X					Man
Defend Building (MOUT) 7-2-1118						X		Man
Perform Cordon and Search 7-2-1105		X	X		X			Man
<b>Figure 2-1. Operation to Collective Task Matrix (continued)</b>								
OPERATIONS								
<b>COLLECTIVE TASKS</b>	<b>MTC</b>	<b>ATK</b>	<b>RAID</b>	<b>AMB</b>	<b>R&amp;S</b>	<b>DEF</b>		<b>BOS</b>
Perform Route Clearance 7-2-1104	X	X			X			Man
Perform Demolition Guard 7-2-1117					X	X		Man
Employ Fire Support 7-2-1200	X	X	X	X	X	X		<b>FS</b>
Breach an Obstacle 7-2-1402	X	X	X					<b>M &amp; S</b>
Maintain Operations 7-2-1409	X	X	X	X	X	X		M & S
Establish a Road Block 7-2-1401					X	X		M & S
Perform Combat Service Support Operations 7-2-1501	X	X	X	X	X	X		<b>CSS</b>
Process Enemy Prisoners Of War/Captured Materials 7-2-1503	X	X	X	X	X	X		CSS
Treat & Evacuate Casualties 7-2-1504	X	X	X	X	X	X		CSS
Develop & Communicate A Plan 7-2-1605	X	X	X	X	X	X		<b>C2</b>
Prepare for Combat 7-2-1606	X	X	X	X	X	X		C2
Perform Consolidation & Reorganization 7-2-1607	X	X	X	X	X	X		C2
<b>Figure 2-1. Operation-to-Collective Task Matrix (continued).</b>								

## CHAPTER 3

### OPERATION OUTLINES

3.1 GENERAL. An operation outline is a diagram of the relationship between each operation and its subordinate collective tasks. Each operation outline provides the commander a diagram of an operation, example STXs, and the collective tasks that comprise them. These operation outlines are an integral part of the overall training plan. The infantry rifle company has six critical wartime operations (Table 3-1).

FIGURE	OPERATION	PAGE
3-2	Movement to Contact	3-3
3-4	Attack	3-3
3-6	Raid	3-4
3-8	Ambush	3-4
3-10	Reconnaissance & Security	3-5
3-12	Defend	3-5
<b>Table 3-1. Listing of Operation Outlines</b>		

While the operation does not change, the supporting tasks and collective tasks vary in combat with the mission, based on METT-T. Figures 3-1 through 3-11 contain example STXs and example operation outlines for the seven critical operations of an infantry company.

3.2 Relationship of Operation Outlines to collective Task Matrixes. The matrixes in Chapter 2 provide the collective tasks for each of the six company critical wartime operations. These tasks can be combined into STXs based on different conditions/missions. Combinations of these tasks can be put into many different STXs and training plans.

a. Situational Training Exercises (STXs). The example operation outlines can be used to help build training plans. The example STXs are developed from the operation outline (paragraph 3-3). The commander can either select an STX from the examples in this chapter, or he can develop a different STX based on his company's training needs. Different conditions require changing the selection of collective tasks to accomplish the same operation. Therefore, STXs must be tailored to the company's mission-essential task list and METT-T conditions.

b. Field Training Exercises. Platoons and squads are trained through drills, platoon T&EOs, and platoon STXs. However, platoon training is not enough to fully train the platoons. Platoons normally fight as part of a company operation. Many platoon tasks require close teamwork with other platoons and must be trained during a controlled company-level FTX. Company-level training requires the integration of rifle platoons, the weapons platoon, and the company headquarters section to accomplish the mission.

3-3. Use of Operation Outlines. The operation outline is used to select the appropriate tasks when planning STXs or FTXs. The first row under the operation contains collective tasks and T&EOs, which are normally performed each time the operation is executed.

3-4. Conditions Statement. The conditions statement, included with each operation, is developed to set the tactical situation and to develop the mission statement. The conditions in the Operations Outlines are examples; commanders are encouraged to develop their own conditions based on their company's METL and the conditions of METT-T.

**OPERATION 1: MOVEMENT TO CONTACT**

EXAMPLE CONDITIONS FOR STX 1: The enemy has broken contact with ANA forces. Our intelligence indicates that the enemy has withdrawn deep into territory he controls, he is being reinforced, and he is preparing to counterattack us. Your company is leading the battalion movement to regain contact with the enemy.

EXAMPLE MISSION STATEMENT: B Company conducts a movement to contact along Axis BRAVO NLT 221300May 06 to regain contact with the enemy.

<b>STX 1: MOVEMENT TO CONTACT</b>
a. Develop & Communicate a Plan
b. Prepare for Combat
c. Move Tactically
d. Take Action on Contact
e. Perform Consolidation and Reorganization
<b>Figure 3-1. Example of Movement to Contact STX</b>

**OPERATION 2: ATTACK**

EXAMPLE CONDITIONS FOR STX 2: Latest intelligence indicates that the enemy has established defensive positions in an area with lots of trees. He has been observed with SA-14 anti-aircraft missiles in these positions. Your company has received the mission to attack one of these positions.

EXAMPLE MISSION STATEMENT: B Company attacks to destroy the enemy anti-aircraft missile site vicinity (state enemy's positions on the map) NLT 220200 JUN06 to destroy or capture all enemy personnel and equipment.

<b>STX 2: ATTACK</b>
a. Develop and Communicate a Plan
b. Prepare for Combat
c. Perform Infiltration/Exfiltration
d. Perform Linkup
e. Perform Assault
f. Perform Stay-Behind Operations
<b>Figure 3-3. Example of Attack STX</b>

**OPERATION 3: RAID**

EXAMPLE CONDITIONS FOR STX 3: Your company has been given the mission of conducting a raid to destroy an enemy base camp. The camp is along a river with a high ridgeline on the far side of the camp. The surrounding terrain is hilly and has many trees. There is one main road along the river that runs through this camp. Helicopters to transport your soldiers are available and an area suitable for their landing is about 5 kilometers from the camp.

EXAMPLE MISSION STATEMENT: A Company conducts a raid, vicinity (state enemy’s positions on the map) NLT 131300JUL06 to destroy the enemy base camp.

<b>STX 3: RAID</b>
a. Develop and Communicate a Plan
b. Prepare for Combat
c. Move Tactically
d. Perform Air Assault
e. Perform Raid
f. Consolidate and Reorganize
<b>Figure 3-5. Example of Raid STX</b>

**OPERATION 4: AMBUSH**

EXAMPLE CONDITIONS FOR STX 4: Latest intelligence indicates that enemy forces have been using a trail network in our area of operations to infiltrate men, equipment and supplies for the enemy to use in operations against us. The enemy is lightly armed and traveling in groups of three to four men. Your company will ambush these groups to keep the men, supplies and equipment from reaching their destination.

EXAMPLE MISSION STATEMENT: A Company conducts ambush vicinity (give ambush map location or locations), NLT 031900JAN06 to destroy or capture enemy men, equipment and supplies.

<b>STX 4: AMBUSH</b>
a. Develop and Communicate a Plan
b. Prepare for Combat
c. Move Tactically
d. Occupy Assembly Area
e. Perform Ambush
f. Consolidate and Reorganize
<b>Figure 3-7. Example of Ambush STX</b>

## **OPERATION 5: RECONNAISSANCE AND SECURITY**

EXAMPLE CONDITIONS FOR STX 5: The company has had very little enemy contact over the last 4 days. Your battalion has ordered your company to begin reconnoitering to locate and enemy command post.

EXAMPLE MISSION STATEMENT: A Company reconnoiters, vicinity Objective ROCK, (give map location of Objective ROCK), NLT 121800DEC06 to locate the enemy command post.

<b>STX 5: RECONNAISSANCE AND SECURITY</b>
a. Develop and Communicate a Plan
b. Prepare for Combat
c. Move Tactically
d. Perform Reconnaissance
<b>Figure 3-9. Example of Reconnaissance and security STX.</b>

## **OPERATION 6: DEFEND**

EXAMPLE CONDITIONS FOR STX 6: Latest intelligence indicates that the enemy plans to attack a police station in your area of operations. The police station is located in a large village. You must defend the entire village in order to protect the police station, policemen, and villagers by not allowing the enemy to use the buildings in the village.

EXAMPLE MISSION STATEMENT: A Company defends village, vicinity TT 131200NOV06 to deny the enemy entrance to the village.

<b>STX 6: DEFEND</b>
a. Develop and Communicate a Plan
b. Prepare for Combat
c. Perform Tactical Road March
d. Conduct a Screen/Guard
e. Execute Defense
<b>Figure 3-11. Example of Defend STX</b>

## CHAPTER 4

## TRAINING EXERCISES

**4-1. GENERAL.** Training exercises are used to train, evaluate, and practice performance-oriented collective tasks. An infantry rifle company must participate in a variety of exercises based on guidance from the battalion commander. The two types of exercises in this MTP are the FTX and STX. These exercises aid the commander in developing, sustaining, and evaluating unit mission proficiency. STXs are single-mission oriented while FTXs are multiple-mission oriented and involve more time, more complexity, and more support.

**4-2. FIELD TRAINING EXERCISES.** An FTX is an exercise of the entire company and is planned, supported, and controlled by the battalion. It is normally conducted against a designated Opposing Force (OPFOR) in as realistic a combat environment as possible. This allows participants to appreciate realistic communications, effects of casualties, time and distance, and numerous factors that complicate the battlefield. FTXs are also costly, requiring extensive fuel, repair parts, support personnel, OPFOR, maneuver areas, and evaluators and controllers. The company FTX provides a logical sequence for performance of the tasks that the company has been trained for in the STX. Full-scale company FTXs must be planned, resourced, and conducted by battalion or brigade staffs. Companies may plan and conduct small-scale (one-mission-oriented) FTXs. This would entail combining several STXs and using internal resources--for example, provide internal OPFOR, evaluators, and controllers. Figure 4-1 shows the relationship between the STXs and a small-scale company FTX.

4-1

**4-3. EXAMPLE FTX.** The example FTX at Figure 4-1 contains two STXs selected or developed by the company commander to support different operations. The sequence of events is used as an example only. The company commander, battalion commander, and battalion staff must make their own training plans (FTXs and STXs) based on the company and battalion METL, local training guidance, assessment of unit strengths and weaknesses, training priorities, local readiness posture, and other factors of METT-T.

<b>STX 2-1</b>	<b>STX 2-2</b>
ATTACK T&EOs	RAID T&EOs
Develop and Communicate a Plan Prepare for Combat Perform Infiltration/Exfiltration Perform Linkup Execute Assault Perform Stay-Behind Operations	Occupy Assembly Area Perform Raid Perform Infil./Exfil. Perform Passage of Lines Consolidate & Reorganize

**Figure 4-1. Example of Small-Scale Company FTX  
(conducted at Company Level)**

4-2

**INFANTRY RIFLE COMPANY  
EXAMPLE FIELD TRAINING EXERCISE**

1. Objective. This example FTX is designed to train the infantry rifle company in conducting general operations. It also provides platoons an opportunity to operate in a setting that prepares them for full-scale FTXs conducted and evaluated by the parent battalion. This exercise provides practice for the company commander, platoon leaders, squad leaders, and company headquarters personnel in planning, coordinating, and controlling combat operations.

2. Supporting Documents.

a. ARTEP 7-10-MTP, Mission Training Plan for the Infantry Rifle Company.

(1) Attack STX 2-1.

(2) Raid STX 2-2.

b. ARTEP 7-8-MTP, Mission Training Plan for the Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad.

(1) Defend, retrograde, and attack STXs (Chapter 4).

(2) T&EOs:

o 7-3/4-1108, Perform Overwatch/Support by Fire.

o 7-3/4-1103, Execute Assault.

o 7-3-1102, Perform Raid.

o 7-3/4-1136, Occupy Assembly Area.

o 7-3/4-1134, Move Tactically.

o 7-3/4-1125, Perform Passage of Lines.

o 7-3/4-1605, Develop and Communicate a Plan.

4-3

o 7-3/4-1607, Perform Consolidation and Reorganization.

o 7-3/4-1116, Perform Stay-Behind or Hide Operations.

o 7-3/4-1137, Perform Infiltration/Exfiltration.

o 7-3/4-1606, Prepare for Combat.

c. ARTEP 7-8-DRILL, Battle Drills for the Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad.

o Battle Drill 2, React to Contact.

o Battle Drill 3, Break Contact.

### 3. Training Enhancers

a. Platoon/squad drills, platoon MTP T&EOs, and platoon and company STXs must be practiced and mastered before FTX training.

b. Force Protection. Protecting the force must be an integral component of training. Safety must be exercised in combat to prevent injury to soldiers; therefore, it must be practiced in training. Realistic, demanding training can be safe if all leaders and soldiers incorporate safety into the planning, preparation, and execution of wartime tasks.

Leaders must make their soldiers aware of individual safety in all subordinate leaders and soldiers. Soldiers must be constantly alert for and avoid situations that may result in injury or death. For example, lock cargo hatches securely and do not grab the hot barrel of a machine gun. Leaders at all levels must also teach and enforce collective safety. For example, use ground guides for vehicle movement, always be aware of your buddies' location during live-fire exercises and enter and exit a helicopter properly. Soldiers must know the capabilities and limitations of their equipment and vehicles so they can understand the potential hazards involved.

4-4

c. Leader training (train the trainer) for this FTX may be conducted by any of the following methods.

(1) A chalk-talk is an exercise where the commander or leader discusses a mission, type of operation, task, technique, or procedure with his subordinate leaders.

(2) A chalk-talk uses minimal resources and can be conducted at any location and level. The leader may use butcher paper, poster board, or charts. This is a beneficial exercise for both leaders and soldiers, since it graphically depicts the placement of items, actions, and responsibilities.

(3) When a Map Exercise (MAPEX) is combined with a sand table exercise, the map and sand table should replicate the actual terrain. The company MAPEX is conducted to allow leaders to analyze terrain and to make tentative plans for areas such as infiltration and withdrawal routes, location for support weapons, vehicles, command posts, and other critical locations.

(4) A Tactical Exercise Without Troops (TEWT) is a terrain walk that is conducted over the same area as the FTX. The TEWT provides the commander and subordinate leaders training in terrain analysis, emplacement of weapons systems, and planning the conduct of the mission. The exercise provides the commander an opportunity to orient subordinate leaders on the terrain and to point out prominent features and their importance to the exercise. During this exercise, the STX scenario can be rehearsed and briefed back to ensure leaders understand the mission and the commander's intent.

(5) Communications Exercise (COMMEX) may be conducted separately or at the same time as the MAPEX or TEWT. The COMMEX gives leaders an opportunity to set up and test communications equipment and to review procedures.

4. General Situation. The battalion is ordered to conduct offensive operations in support of the brigade mission. The company is ordered to infiltrate enemy lines, destroy an enemy supply site and to be prepared to perform stay-behind operations. This exercise should be conducted at night if the company's training status permits.

5. Support Requirements.

a. Minimum trainers/evaluators. This exercise should be conducted for practice with the company commander as the senior evaluator for his platoons. The XO, First Sergeant, and platoon leaders should serve as the primary trainers during this exercise.

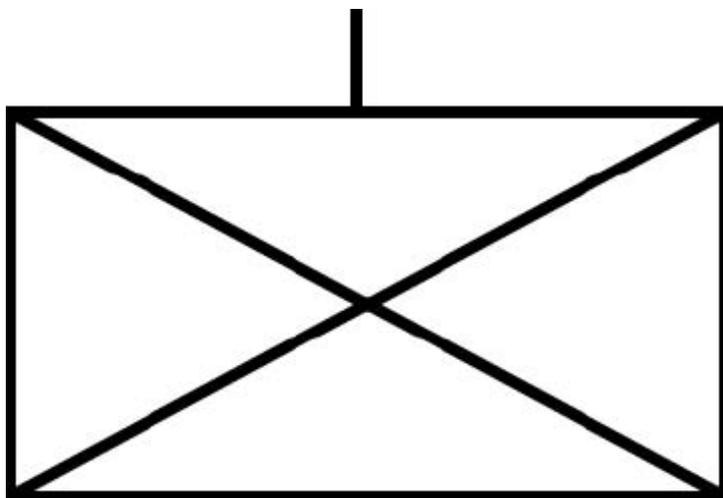
b. Vehicles/Communications. The company should bring all its assigned communications equipment.

c. Opposing Force (OPFOR). The OPFOR can come from the company or from another unit in the battalion. The T&EOs in Chapter 5 have the tasks, conditions, and standards for the OPFOR.

d. Maneuver Area. A training area of at least 25 square kilometers is desired for this exercise.

e. Ammunition and Pyrotechnics. Recommend each rifleman receive 120 rounds each and each machine gun team to receive 600 rounds each. If any explosive simulators or smoke is available, it too should be used.

**Training and Evaluation Outlines**  
**INFANTRY RIFLE**  
**COMPANY**



**T&EO'S FOR THE INFANTRY COMPANY**

<b>TABLE OF CONTENTS</b>	<b>Page</b>
Preface.....	iii
Purpose.....	1
Conduct a Route Reconnaissance (07-2-2009).....	3
Conduct an Area or Zone Reconnaissance (07-2-2018).....	8
Establish Observation Post (07-2-2027).....	12
Reconnoiter a Built-Up Area (07-2-2054).....	15
Conduct a Cordon and Search in a Built-Up Area (07-2-1027).....	20
Conduct a Defense (07-2-1045).....	24
Conduct a Raid (07-2-1135).....	30
Conduct an Ambush (07-2-1243).....	36
Conduct an Attack by Fire (07-2-1256).....	43
Conduct an Attack of a Built-Up Area (07-2-1261).....	47
Defend in an Urban Environment (07-2-1378).....	53
Conduct Coordination (07-2-5036).....	59
Conduct Risk Management (07-2-5063).....	62
Occupy an Assembly Area (07-2-5126).....	65
Operate a Command Post (07-2-5135).....	70
Prepare for Combat (07-2-5153).....	74
Conduct Movement to Contact (07-2-1090).....	78
Conduct Hasty Displacement (07-2-1297).....	85
Report Tactical Information (07-2-2072).....	88
Conduct a Deliberate Attack (07-2-1000).....	90
Conduct a Bypass (07-2-1018).....	96
Conduct a Delay (07-2-1054).....	100
Conduct a Guard Mission (07-2-1063).....	105
Conduct a Link-Up (07-2-1081).....	110
Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (07-2-1108-A).....	114

<b>TABLE OF CONTENTS</b>	<b>Page</b>
<b>T&amp;EO's Cont'd</b>	
Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Stationary Unit (07-2-1126-A).....	119
Conduct a Tactical Road March (Dismounted) (07-2-1189).....	123
Conduct an Infiltration or Exfiltration (07-2-1270).....	129
Conduct Convoy Escort (07-2-1279).....	133
Conduct a Screen (07-2-1171).....	139
Conduct Operations During Limited Visibility (07-2-1306-A).....	143
Conduct Patrol Operations (07-2-1315).....	146
Conduct a Tactical Movement (07-2-1342).....	151
Conduct a Tactical Movement in a Built-Up Area (07-2-1351).....	157
Control Civil Disturbance Operations (07-2-1360).....	162
Employ a Reserve Force (07-2-1387).....	166
Establish a Base Camp (07-2-1405).....	169
Establish Checkpoints and or Roadblocks (07-2-1414).....	174
React to Snipers (07-2-1432).....	178
Secure Routes (07-2-1450).....	181
Take Actions on Contact (07-2-1468).....	185
Breach an Obstacle (07-2-1477).....	190
Integrate Direct Fires (07-2-3027).....	195
Integrate Indirect Fire Support (07-2-3036).....	199
Employ Camouflage, Concealment, and Deception (07-2-6045).....	204
Conduct a Withdrawal (07-2-1216).....	208
Maintain Operations Security (07-2-6063).....	212
Conduct Resupply Operations (07-2-4000).....	215
Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (07-2-4027).....	219
Process Captured Documents and Equipment (07-2-4045).....	222
Secure Civilians During Operations (07-2-4054).....	224
Treat and Evacuate Casualties (07-2-4063).....	227
Conduct a Rehearsal (07-2-5009).....	230
Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (07-2-5027).....	233
Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures (07-2-5081).....	236
Establish Communications (07-2-5090).....	239

<b>TABLE OF CONTENTS</b>	<b>Page</b>
<b>T&amp;EO's Cont'd</b>	
Conduct Demolition Guard Mission (07-2-1288).....	243
Feedback Form.....	248

## ANA TRAINING CIRCULAR for the Infantry Rifle Company (T&EO's)

### **PREFACE**

This coordinating draft is published for the expressed purpose of soliciting feedback from the Afghan National Army in the field, thereby capitalizing on the outstanding “war fighting experience” of Soldiers, Noncommissioned Officer’s and Officers throughout the Afghan National Army. This Coordinating Draft will serve as the doctrinal reference for the ANA until such time as the final approved Field Manual for the Infantry Rifle Company is published.

# PURPOSE

**Introduction** Training and evaluation outlines are the foundation of the mission training plan and the collective training of the units. Training and evaluation outlines are training objectives (task, conditions, and standards) for the collective task which support critical wartime operations. The unit must master designated collective tasks to perform its critical wartime operations. Training and evaluation outlines may be trained separately, in a situational training exercise, in a field training exercise, or in live fire exercises. For collective live fire standards, the trainer needs to refer to the applicable gunnery manual for the appropriate course of fire. Those standards and courses of fire need to be combined into the training exercise.

**Format.** The training and evaluation outlines are prepared for every collective task supports critical wartime operation accomplishment. Each training and evaluation outlines contains the following items:

- a. Task. This is a description of the action to be performed by the unit, and the task number.
- b. Iteration. Use to identify how many times the task is performed and evaluated during training.
- c. Commander/Leader Assessment. Is used by the unit leadership to assess the proficiency of the unit in performing the task to standard. Assessments are subjective in nature and use all available evaluation data and leader input to develop an assessment of the organization's overall capability to accomplish the task. Use the following ratings:
  - (1) T- Trained. The unit is trained and has demonstrated its proficiency in accomplishing the task to wartime standards.
  - (2) P- Need practice. The unit needs to practice the task. Performance has shown that the unit does not achieve standard without some difficulty or has failed to perform some task steps to standards.
  - (3) U- Untrained. The unit can not demonstrate an ability to achieve wartime proficiency.
- d. Condition. A statement of the situation or environment in which the unit is to do the collective task.
- e. Task Standard.
  - (1) The task standards states the performance criteria that a unit must achieve to successfully execute the task. The overall standard should be the focus of training. It should be understood by every soldier.
  
  - (2) The trainer or evaluator determines the unit's training status using performance observation measurements (where applicable) and his judgment. The unit must be evaluated in the context of the mission, enemy, troops, terrain and time (METT-T) conditions. These conditions should be as similar as possible for all evaluated elements. This will establish a common base line for unit performance.
- f. Task Steps and Performance Measures. This is a listing of actions that is required to complete the task. These actions are stated in terms of observable performance for evaluating training proficiency. The task steps are arranged in order along with supporting individual tasks. Leaders tasks within each training and evaluation outline are indicated by an asterisk (\*). Under each task step are listed the performance measures that must be accomplished to correctly perform the task steps. If the unit

fails to correctly perform one of these task steps to standard, it has failed to achieve the overall task standard.

g. GO/NO-GO column. This column is provided for noting the platoon's performance measure for a task step and place an "X" in the appropriate column. A major portion of the performance measures must be marked a "GO" for the task step to be successfully performed.

h. Task performance/evaluation summary block. This block provides the trainer a means of recording the total number of task steps and performance measures evaluated and those evaluated as "GO". It also provides the leader with a historical record for five training iterations.

i. Supporting Individuals Tasks. This is a listing of all supporting individual task required to correctly perform the task.

**Use.** The training and evaluation outline can be used to train or evaluate a single task. Several training and evaluation outline can be used to train or evaluate a group of tasks such as a situational training exercise or field training exercise.



- (3) Identifies likely enemy avenues of approach.
- (4) Marks tentative dismount points on maps as appropriate.
- (5) Designates boundaries, a line of departure (LD), and a limit of advance (LOA).
- (6) Places contact points at the intersections of phase lines and boundaries and any other places he wants physical contact and coordination between his recon platoon.

- b. Identifies the focus of the reconnaissance (oriented on the terrain or on the enemy force).
- c. Organizes the company as necessary to accomplish the mission and or compensate for combat losses.
- d. Coordinates with the units patrolling in the adjacent areas using radio or other tactical means.
- e. Coordinates indirect fires to support the company's scheme of maneuver.
- f. Selects a mounted or dismounted reconnaissance based on factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civil considerations.
- g. Addresses actions on contact with the enemy.
- h. Plans and coordinates a passage of lines if required.

\* 5. Company commander issues orders and instructions including rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).

- a. Issues clear and concise taskings to platoons/elements.

6. Company conducts a rehearsal.

\* 7. Company commander issues a fragmentary order (FRAGOs), as necessary, to address changes to the plan identified during the rehearsal.

8. Company conducts a passage of lines, if required.

9. Company moves tactically to the line of departure (LD).

- a. Uses different covered and concealed routes.
- b. Maintains security during movement.
- c. Deploys sections abreast across the line of departure (LD).

10. Company moves along the route.

- a. Uses the formation and appropriate technique of movement, adjusting the technique as required by factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civil considerations.
  - (1) Traveling over watch when enemy contact is possible.
  - (2) Bounding over watch, within sections, when enemy contact is expected.

11. Company conducts the reconnaissance.

- a. Determines traffic ability of the route.
  - (1) Identifies the available space in which a force can maneuver without being forced to bunch up due to obstacles (reported in meters). The size of trees and the density of forests are reported due to the effect on vehicle movement.

- b. Reconnoiters terrain that dominates the route.
- c. Reconnoiters all lateral routes.
- d. Identifies aspects of adjacent terrain from both the friendly and enemy points of view.
- e. Attempts to locate a bypass around built up areas, obstacles, or other restrictions.
- f. Inspects and classifies all bridges on the route, within their capability.
- g. Reconnoiters all defiles along the route.
- h. Locates minefields and other obstacles along the route.
- i. Locates fords or crossing sites near all bridges on the route.
  - (1) Landing zones and pickup zones.
  - (2) Locations along the route that provide good cover and concealment.
  - (3) Observation and fields of fire along the route and adjacent terrain.
- j. Reconnoiters intersecting routes beyond direct fire range.
- k. Determines road width of constrictions (bridges, tunnels, and so forth) with width and lengths of the traveled ways in meters.
  - (1) Underpass limitations with limiting heights and widths in meters.
  - (2) Bridge bypasses classified as easy, difficult, or impossible.
  - (3) Civil or military road numbers or other designations.
  - (4) Locations of fords, ferries, and tunnels, including limiting information.

12. Reconnaissance and security elements conduct withdrawal and disseminate information.

- a. Secure enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.
- b. Evacuate casualties.
- c. Return to the objective rally point (ORP).
- d. Consolidate and reorganize as necessary.
- e. Consolidate gathered information.
- f. Provide gathered information to designated recorder(s).
- g. Disseminate gathered information to all platoon members through the squad leaders at the objective rally point (ORP), or moves to another position at least one terrain feature away to disseminate information.
- h. Report information of immediate effect to higher headquarters using radio, or other tactical means.

13. Company moves tactically to designated debriefing site.

- a. Processes captured documents and or equipment as required.

\*14. Company commander submits the route reconnaissance overlay using radio other tactical means.

- a. Includes required information.
  - (1) Two grid references.
  - (2) Magnetic north arrow.
  - (3) Route drawn to scale.
  - (4) Title block.

b. Includes additional information as directed. (1) All restrictions to the traffic flow, to include bypass capability and classification for all restrictive passages. (2) Road curves having a radius less than 45 meters. (3) Steep grades with their maximum gradients.								
<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>								
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>		
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED								
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"								

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

**Task Title**

- Locate a target by Grid Coordinates
- Move as a Member of a Fire Team
- React to Indirect Fire While Dismounted
- Select a Movement Route Using a Map
- Control Movement of a Fire Team
- Conduct the Maneuver of a Squad
- Identify Terrain Features on a Map
- Determine the Grid Coordinates of a Point on a Military Map
- Determine a Magnetic Azimuth Using a Lensatic Compass
- Determine a Location on the Ground by Terrain Association
- Navigate from One Point on the Ground to Another Point While Dismounted
- Convert Azimuths
- Orient a Map Using a Lensatic Compass
- Orient a Map to the Ground by Map-Terrain Association
- Locate an Unknown Point on a Map and on the Ground by Resection
- Practice Noise, Light, and Litter Discipline
- Analyze Terrain
- Conduct a Leader's Reconnaissance
- Conduct the Maneuver of a Platoon

### SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

**Task Title**

- Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Tactical Movement (Infantry Company)
- Report Tactical Information (Infantry Company)
- Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Infantry Company)
- Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry Company)
- Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Infantry Company)

---

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS Cont'd**

**Task Title**

Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Company)

Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Company)

Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)

Maintain Operations Security (Infantry Company)

## TRAINING EVALUATION OUTLINE

**TASK:** Conduct an Area or Zone Reconnaissance (Infantry Company) (07-2-2018)

**ITERATION:**     **1    2    3    4    5**                                   **(Circle)**

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:**   **T    P    U**           **(Circle)**

**CONDITIONS:** The company is conducting operations as part of a larger force and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct an area or zone reconnaissance to obtain detailed information about the specified location and surrounding area. Coordinates for the designated area or zone and the start time are provided. Enemy contact is likely. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The company has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The company has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company conducts the area reconnaissance in accordance with (IAW) tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and or higher commander's guidance. All specified information is collected and reported to higher headquarters as required. The company commander selects a mounted or dismounted reconnaissance based on factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC). The company reconnoiters all specified terrain within the area or zone. The company completes the reconnaissance without being detected. The company complies with the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).

<b>T ASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO GO</b>
<p>1. Company leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using information that is gathered from maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.</p> <p>* 2. Company commander receives an operations order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) and issues warning order (WARNO) to the company using radio or other tactical means.</p> <p>.</p> <p>* 3. Company commander determines the requirements for the reconnaissance. Verifies requirements with the kandak commander and staff as necessary.</p> <p>* 4. Company commander plans using troop-leading procedures.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Conducts a map reconnaissance.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(1) Identifies tentative objective rally points (ORPs),</p>		

<p>reconnaissance routes, rally points, contact points, and phase lines as required.</p> <p>(2) Identifies tentative support by fire and assault positions if applicable.</p> <p>(3) Identifies likely enemy avenues of approach.</p> <p>(4) Identifies routes to and from the objective rally point (ORP) and objective as appropriate.</p> <p>(5) Marks tentative dismount points on maps as appropriate.</p> <p>(6) Encloses the specified area within a company zone.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(a) Verifies boundaries, a line of departure (LD), and a limit of advance (LOA).</p> <p>(7) Places contact points at the intersections of phase lines and boundaries and any other places he wants physical contact and coordination between his recon sections.</p> <p>b. Identifies the focus of the reconnaissance (oriented on the terrain or on the enemy force).</p> <p>c. Organizes the company as necessary to accomplish the mission and or compensate for combat losses.</p> <p>d. Coordinates with the units patrolling in the adjacent areas using other tactical means.</p> <p>e. Coordinates indirect fires to support the company's scheme of maneuver.</p> <p>f. Plans and coordinates a passage of lines.</p> <p>g. The company mentions those activity and actions that should be taken on the chance contact.</p> <p>* 5. Company commander issues orders and instructions including rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">a. Issues clear and concise taskings to platoons and or elements.</p> <p>6. Company conducts a rehearsal.</p> <p>* 7. Company commander issues fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) as necessary to address changes to the plan identified during the rehearsal.</p> <p>8. Company conducts a passage of lines, if required.</p> <p>9. Company moves tactically to the line of departure (LD).</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">a. Uses different covered and concealed routes to and from the area or zone.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">b. Maintains security during movement.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">c. Deploys sections abreast across the line of departure (LD).</p> <p>10. Company moves tactically from the line of departure (LD) to the objective rally point (ORP).</p> <p>11. Company conducts reconnaissance of and occupies the objective</p>		
---	--	--

rally point (ORP).

a. Establishes and or maintains security at the objective rally point (ORP).

(1) Positions other security teams as required on likely enemy avenues of approach into the objective area.

12. Company conducts an AREA reconnaissance from the objective rally point (ORP).

a. Recons the objective.

(1) Issues a contingency plan before departure the objective rally point (ORP).

(2) Pinpoints the objective.

(3) Locates observation or surveillance positions, routes, and security positions.

(4) Determines or confirms the enemy situation in the objective area.

(5) Locates enemy observation posts (OPs).

(6) Determines enemy security status and activity.

(7) Designates the release point and the positions for the reconnaissance and security elements.

b. Company conducts actions at the objective.

(1) Uses surveillance or vantage points.

(2) Maintains communications with the company throughout the reconnaissance using other tactical means.

(3) Selects one of the following reconnaissance techniques based on factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC).

(a) Conducts reconnaissance by short-range observation and surveillance.

(b) Conducts reconnaissance by long-range observation and surveillance.

13. Company conducts a ZONE reconnaissance from the objective rally point (ORP).

a. Uses the designated method along routes.

(1) Fan method.

(2) Converging routes method.

(3) Successive sectors method.

b. Maintains communications with the company throughout the reconnaissance using other tactical means.

c. Gathers all information based on priority intelligence requirements (PIR) in accordance with (IAW) the operations order (OPORD).

d. Continues until all assigned areas are reconnoitered

14. Reconnaissance and security elements conduct withdrawal and disseminate information.

a. Secure enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.

b. Evacuate casualties.

c. Return to the objective rally point (ORP) or to a rally point.

d. Consolidate and reorganize as necessary.

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Consolidate gathered information.</li> <li>f. Provide gathered information to designated recorder(s).</li> <li>g. Disseminate gathered information to all company members through the squad leaders at the objective rally point (ORP), or moves to another position at least one terrain feature away to disseminate information.</li> <li>h. Report information of immediate effect to higher headquarters using radio, or other tactical means</li> </ul> <p>15. Company reports to the designated debriefing area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Generates reconnaissance reports and or overlays.</li> <li>b. Processes captured documents and or equipment as required.</li> </ul>		
--	--	--

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

### **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

#### **TASK Title**

- Move as a Member of a Fire Team
- React to Indirect Fire While Dismounted
- Control Movement of a Fire Team
- Conduct the Maneuver of a Squad
- Coordinate with an Adjacent Platoon
- Perform Surveillance without the Aid of Electronic Devices
- Analyze Terrain
- Conduct a Leader's Reconnaissance
- Control Organic Fires
- Conduct an Area Reconnaissance by a Platoon

### **SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

#### **Task Title**

- Conduct Tactical Movement (Infantry Company)
- Report Tactical Information (Infantry Company)
- Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Infantry Company)
- Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)
- Prepare for Combat (Infantry Company)
- Maintain Operations Security (Infantry Company)



- c. Determines appropriate manning level for either continuous or periodic operation.
- d. Determines number of areas requiring observation (day and night).
- e. Identifies special equipment requirements for observation posts (OPs) based on mission requirements.
- f. Plans for local security.
- g. Plans for continuous communications between observation posts (OPs).
- h. Prioritizes observation post (OP) work requirements with special emphasis on accomplishing the mission and protecting the force.
- i. Identifies required report formats.
- j. Integrates observation posts (OPs) into supporting direct and indirect fire plans and into the overall observation plan.
- k. Plans and coordinates combat service support (CSS).
- l. Organizes the company as necessary to accomplish the mission and compensate for combat losses.
- m. Coordinates details of quick reaction force (QRF) employment with the quick reaction force (QRF) commander. At a minimum:
  - (1) Confirms quick reaction force (QRF) radio frequency (ies), call sign(s), and recognition signals.
  - (2) Identifies quick reaction force quick reaction force (QRF) link-up points for each observation post (OP).
  - (3) Confirms link-up procedures.
  - (4) Confirms battle hand off procedures.
  - (5) Confirms procedures for transfer of information.

\* 4. Company commander or designated representative ensures observation post (OP) personnel have the proper equipment, supplies, and information.

\* 5. Company commander disseminates overlays, and other pertinent information to each platoon to keep them abreast of the situation.

\* 6. Company commander issues orders and instructions to include rules of engagement (ROE) and or rule of interaction (ROI).
 

- a. Issues clear and concise taskings to platoons.

7. Company conducts a rehearsal.
 

- a. Rehearses movement to observation post (OP) sites.
- b. Rehearses occupation of the observation post (OP) sites.
- c. Rehearses relief and shift changes.
- d. Rehearses evacuation of observation posts (OPs) under attack.
- e. Rehearses casualty evacuation.
- f. Rehearses actions on contact.
- g. Rehearses quick reaction force (QRF) link-up.

\* 8. Company commander issues fragmentary orders (FRAGOs), as necessary, to address changes to the plan identified during the rehearsal.

9. Company elements establish and operate observation posts (OPs).

<p>* 10. Company commander and or designated representative supervise observation post of (Ops).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinates and or synchronizes actions of subordinate elements.</li> <li>b. Uses fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) as necessary to redirect actions of subordinate elements.</li> <li>c. Ensure local security is maintained.</li> <li>d. Monitors shift changes.</li> </ul> <p>11. Company conducts observation posts (OP) operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintains continuous communications with higher headquarters, quick reaction force (QRF), and other observation posts (OPs).</li> <li>b. Employs minimum necessary force within rules of engagement (ROE).</li> <li>c. Requests quick reaction force (QRF), if required.</li> <li>d. Employs the quick reaction force (QRF) as part of the company or, responds to orders of quick reaction force (QRF) commander, depending on decision of the higher headquarters commander.</li> <li>e. Maintains observation of assigned sector.</li> <li>f. Identifies enemy activity in sector.</li> <li>g. Reports activity in accordance with (IAW) order, tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), and or guidance.</li> </ul>		
---	--	--

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**  
**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

**Task Title**

- Conduct Tactical Movement (Infantry Company)
- Employ Obstacle(s) (Infantry Company)
- Conduct an Area or Zone Reconnaissance (Infantry Company)
- Report Tactical Information (Infantry Company)
- Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Infantry Company)
- Secure Civilians during Operations (Infantry Company)
- Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)
- Prepare for Combat (Infantry Company)
- Maintain Operations Security (Infantry Company)



- (1) Determines if reconnaissance effort is subterranean.
- b. Conducts a map reconnaissance.
  - (1) Identifies start point, rally points, reconnaissance routes, and phase lines as required.
  - (2) Identifies security positions, if applicable.
  - (3) Identifies the best approach route into and exit route out of the urban area.
  - (4) Identifies surveillance positions within the urban area
  - (5) Identifies key terrain.
  - (6) Identifies likely enemy avenues of approach.
  - (7) Identifies potential safe havens for enemy forces, such as.
    - (a) Hospitals.
    - (b) Clinics.
    - (c) Mosques
    - (d) Identifies hazardous and or danger areas, such as Intersections.
  - (9) Identifies major and key terrain features, such as bridges.
  - (10) Identifies routes to and from rally points as appropriate.
  - (11) Marks tentative dismount points on maps as appropriate.
  - (12) Designates boundaries and a line of departure (LD).
  - (13) Places contact points at the intersections of phase lines and boundaries and any other places he wants physical contact and coordination between his recon sections.
- c. Selects appropriate company organization, if not specified in the operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO).
- d. Develops a sketch of the urban area showing the objective area and areas of concern.
- e. Plans for redundant communications that will allow the company freedom of movement.
- f. Coordinates with elements patrolling in adjacent areas.
- g. Coordinates indirect fires to support the company's scheme of maneuver.
- h. Selects a mounted or dismounted reconnaissance based on factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civil considerations.
- i. Addresses actions on chance contact with the enemy.
- j. Coordinates and synchronizes activities within each battlefield operating system (BOS).
- k. Considers the enemy's capabilities, likely course of actions (COAs), and specific weapons capabilities.
- l. Plans and coordinates a passage of lines, if required.

\* 5. Company commander disseminates overlays, sketch of urban area, and other pertinent information to each squad to keep them abreast of the situation.

\* 6. Company commander issues orders and instructions including rule of engagement (ROE) and or rule of interaction (ROI).

- a. Issues clear and concise taskings to platoons and or elements.

7. Company rehearses.

\* 8. Company commander issues a fragmentary order (FRAGOs), as necessary, to address changes to the plan identified during the rehearsal.

9. Company conducts passage of lines, if applicable.

10. Reconnaissance elements move to start point and cross line of departure at the designated time and conduct tactical movement to designated rally point vicinity the built-up area.

a. Maintain security during movement.

b. Halt mounted movement and dismounts far enough away from the built-up so as not alert an enemy force its presence.

(1) Clears the area forward to establish visual contact with the built-up area from a distance as far away as practical.

(a) Once secured, mounted elements are brought forward and occupy concealed positions to observe and cover dismounted operations.

11. Reconnaissance elements visually reconnoiter built-up area from maximum practical range for evidence of enemy forces (movement, antennas, fortification, rubble, etc.)

a. View the objective from several different positions, if possible, to provide maximum coverage.

\* 12. Company commander coordinates and or synchronizes actions of reconnaissance elements.

\* 13. Company commander uses fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) as necessary to redirect actions of subordinate elements

14. Element conducts reconnaissance MOUNTED. (See "Conduct an Area or Zone Reconnaissance [Company and Squad]" for additional information on conducting a reconnaissance.)

a. Secures external equipment and weapons high enough on the vehicle to prevent locals from trying to snatch it/them.

b. Uses different entry and exit routes.

c. Uses moderate speeds (24 to 32 kilometers per hour).

d. Lead vehicle stops only to investigate those areas that pose a potential threat to the company.

e. Dismounts soldiers to provide security, when vehicles are required to stop.

f. Ensures mutual support and depth by maintaining constant observation among vehicles.

g. Maintains all-round security.

h. Maintains communications between mounted and dismounted elements.

i. Adjusts patrol routes and speed to promote deception and avoid repetitive patterns.

j. Moves through the built-up area undetected by enemy forces.

k. Collects intelligence information in accordance with (IAW) the operation order (OPORD) and or commander's guidance.

- |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|
| <p>15. Element conducts reconnaissance DISMOUNTED.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moves in traveling overwatch to provide security and observes for signs of activity (rubble, spent shell casings, building damage, etc.) while collecting required intelligence and information.</li> <li>b. Clears into the built-up area under cover of company vehicles, using avenues that provide the best cover and concealment. Stealth is required to avoid detection and compromise of the mission.</li> <li>c. Moves through the built-up area undetected by enemy forces.</li> <li>d. Maintains communications between mounted and dismounted elements.</li> <li>e. Collects intelligence information in accordance with (IAW) the operation order (OPORD) and or commander's guidance.</li> </ul> <p>16. Company commander assigns subterranean reconnaissance to platoons.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Team leader supervises reconnaissance. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Determines and or briefs recognition signals to prevent fratricide.</li> <li>(2) Organizes patrol to accomplish the mission and provide security. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Point man enters the subterranean area 10 minutes before the rest of the team follows to determine whether the air is safe to breathe and if movement is restricted.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(3) Point man moves about 10 meters in front of team leader. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Other team members maintain five-meter intervals.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(4) Navigates and records data through the passage.</li> <li>(5) Posts two soldiers at the point of entry as security.</li> <li>(6) Assigns personnel to carry special equipment and tools, such as a tool to open manhole covers. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Notes the azimuth and pace count of each turn he takes in the tunnel.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(7) Maintains communications between mounted and dismounted elements.</li> <li>(8) Collects intelligence information in accordance (IAW) the operation order (OPORD) and or commander's guidance</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>17. Company commander submits situation reports (SITREPs) to higher headquarters as necessary.</p> <p>18. Designated personnel complete the following.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Secure enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.</li> <li>b. Evacuate casualties</li> </ul> <p>19. Company withdraws to a designated rally point and or area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.</li> <li>b. Consolidates gathered information.</li> <li>c. Provides gathered information to designated recorder(s).</li> <li>d. Disseminates gathered information to all company members as necessary.</li> <li>e. Reports information of immediate effect to higher headquarters.</li> </ul> |  |  |
|--|--|--|

20. Company moves to the designated debriefing area. a. Generates reconnaissance reports and or overlays. b. Processes captured documents and or equipment as required.		
---	--	--

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASK**

**Task Title**

- Conduct Tactical Movement in a Built-up Area (Infantry Company)
- Report Tactical Information (Infantry Company)
- Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Infantry Company)
- Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry Company)
- Secure Civilians during Operations (Infantry Company)
- Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Infantry Company)
- Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)
- Maintain Operations Security (Infantry Company)



- (1) Identifies search location(s).
- (2) Identifies tentative security positions.
- (3) Identifies cordon boundaries and other control measures.
- (4) Identifies routes to and from the search area.
- (5) Marks tentative dismount points on maps as appropriate.

- d. Plans security positions to ensure the protection of the force conducting the operation.
- e. Designs the cordon to prevent the escape of individuals to be searched.
- f. Divides the cordoned area into zones and assigns a search team.
- g. Coordinates and synchronizes activities within each battlefield operating system (BOS), as required.
- h. Develops plan to handle captured and apprehended personnel.
- i. Addresses actions on chance contact with belligerents.
- j. Organizes the company as necessary to accomplish the mission and compensate for combat losses.

- (1) Organizes the search element into special teams.

Note: This task may be delegated to a subordinate leader.

- (a) Search team(s)
- (b) Handlers of prisoner(s).
- (c) Interrogation team(s).
- (d) Documentation team(s) (using a recorder with a camera).
- (e) Demolition team(s).
- (f) Psychological operation (PSYOP) and or civil affairs team(s).
- (g) Mine detection team(s).
- (h) Fire support team(s).
- (i) Scout dog team(s).
- (j) Tunnel reconnaissance team(s).

\* 4. Company commander disseminates overlays, and other pertinent information to each element to keep them abreast of the situation.

\* 5. Company commander issues orders and instructions to include rule of engagement (ROE) and or rule of interaction (ROI).

- a. Issues clear and concise taskings to platoons and or elements and or cordon and search elements.

6. Company conducts a rehearsal.

\* 7. Company commander issues a fragmentary order (FRAGO), as necessary, to address changes to the plan identified during the rehearsal.

\* 8. Company commander coordinates/synchronizes actions of the cordon and search elements.

\* 9. Company commander uses fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) as necessary to redirect actions of subordinate elements.

\*10. Company commander uses fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) as necessary to redirect actions of subordinate elements.

<p>11. Company elements move to the area to be searched</p> <p>12. Cordon element establishes cordon.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Rapidly moves into the positions by stealth in accordance with (IAW) tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), order, and or guidance from higher headquarters.</li> <li>b. Surrounds the area simultaneously to prevent escape of insurgents and to block any reinforcements (during hours of limited visibility, if possible).</li> <li>c. Positions elements in overwatch or blocking positions to support the cordon and isolate the search area from reinforcements.</li> <li>d. Establishes checkpoints and roadblocks.</li> </ul> <p>13. Search element conducts the search.</p> <p>Note: The search may be announced or unannounced in accordance with (IAW) the order or situation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducts the search of suspected insurgents and or sympathizers, supplies, and equipment with the least inconvenience to the populace using one of three methods. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Assembles inhabitants in a central location if they appear to be hostile. (This method provides the most control and simplifies the search and interrogation; however, taking inhabitants away from their dwellings encourages looting and ill feelings.)</li> <li>(2) Restricts inhabitants to their homes. (This prohibits civilian movement and discourages looting, but makes control and interrogation difficult).</li> <li>(3) Controls the heads of households. (Reduces looting and ensures the search teams do not steal anything; this is the best method of searching since it is less disruptive to the inhabitants).</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Searches all underground and underwater areas.</li> <li>c. Uses observed fire to cover any gaps in the cordon.</li> <li>d. Inspects any freshly excavated ground. (It could be a hiding place.)</li> <li>e. Uses mine detectors to locate metal objects underground and underwater.</li> </ul> <p>* 14. Company commander controls the company's rate of search and directs reorganization as needed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Employs the reserve to assist the cordon and search elements as the situation requires.</li> <li>b. Reports the progress of the company to the higher headquarters commander.</li> <li>c. Enforces the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).</li> </ul> <p>15. Company consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.</p> <p>16. Company secures captured insurgents as required.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Uses the least force to detain the insurgents.</li> <li>b. Turns the insurgents over to the local police as soon as the situation allows.</li> </ul>		
--	--	--

17. Company treats and evacuates casualties.		
18. Company processes captured documents and or equipment as required.		
19. Company continues operations as directed.		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

**Task Title**

- Conduct Tactical Movement in a Built-up Area (Infantry Company)
- Establish Checkpoints and or Roadblocks (Infantry Company)
- Report Tactical Information (Infantry Company)
- Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Infantry Company)
- Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Infantry Company)
- Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry Company)
- Secure Civilians during Operations (Infantry Company)
- Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Infantry Company)
- Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)
- Prepare for Combat (Infantry Company)
- Maintain Operations Security (Infantry Company)



- a. Conducts analysis based on factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC).
  - (1) Considers the enemy's capabilities, likely courses of action (COAs), and specific weapons capabilities.
- b. Conducts a map reconnaissance.
  - (1) Identifies likely enemy avenues of approach.
  - (2) Identifies the enemy scheme of maneuver using intelligence products.
  - (3) Determines where to kill the enemy.
  - (4) Identifies tentative locations for weapons systems.
  - (5) Identifies tentative primary, alternate, and supplemental mounted and dismounted defensive positions (as required).
  - (6) Identifies tentative target reference points (TRPs) for each defensive position.
  - (7) Identifies tentative observation post (OP) positions.
  - (8) Identifies tentative dismount/remount points (as required).
- c. Designates the main effort and supporting effort.
- d. Plans and coordinates indirect fire support and or close air support, if available.
- e. Identifies direct fire responsibilities.
- f. Plans the integration of direct and indirect fires in accordance with (IAW) higher headquarters' fire support plan.
- g. Develops an integrated obstacle plan.
- h. Designates defensive fire control measures.
- i. Develops disengagement criteria.
- j. Organizes the company as necessary to accomplish the mission and or compensate for combat losses.
- k. Addresses actions on contact with the enemy.
- l. Coordinates and synchronizes activities within each battlefield operating system (BOS).
- m. Considers the enemy's capabilities, likely courses of actions (COAs), and specific weapons capabilities.
- n. Conducts coordination with adjacent unit as required.
- o. Addresses actions on contact with the enemy.

\* 5. Company commander disseminates overlays, and other pertinent information to each platoon to keep them abreast of the situation.

\* 6. Company commander issues orders and instructions to include rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).

- a. Issues clear concise taskings to platoons and or elements.

7. Company conducts a rehearsal, time permitting.

\* 8. Company commander issues fragmentary orders (FRAGOs), as necessary, to address changes to the plan identified during the rehearsal.

9. Company starts movement to a tactical assembly area or designated area short of the defensive position(s).

- a. Uses appropriate formation/technique based on factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC).

- b. Moves on covered and concealed routes.
- c. Maintains security during movement.
- d. Secures designated area.

\* 10. Company commander and reconnaissance element conducts the reconnaissance (based on factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC).

- a. Pinpoints the defensive position(s).
- b. Positions security elements.
- c. Determines and confirms the engagement area (where he plans to kill the enemy).
- d. Drives or walks the engagement area to confirm the selected positions.
- e. Ensures positions are free of enemy, mines, and obstacles.
- f. Selects primary, alternate, and supplementary fighting positions (mounted and dismounted) to achieve the desired effect for each TRP.
- g. Assigns platoon sectors and observation posts (OP) locations. Observation posts (OPs) have wire communications, if available.
- h. Identifies dead space between platoons.
  - (1) Determines how it is to be covered.
- i. Selects weapons positions to cover likely avenues of approach.
  - (1) Ensures platoon leaders position weapons systems so the required number of weapons, vehicles (if applicable), and platoons can effectively cover target reference points (TRPs).
- j. Selects covered and concealed routes between primary, alternate, and supplementary defensive position(s).
- k. Confirms tentative dismount/remount points (as applicable).
- l. Verifies and updates intelligence information.
- m. Leaves a surveillance team to observe the defensive position(s), if required.
- n. Returns to the company location.

\* 11. Company commander adjust the plan based on updated intelligence and reconnaissance effort.

\* 12. Company commander updates the enemy situation.

\* 13. Company commander disseminates updated overlays, and other pertinent information.

\* 14. Company commander coordinates and or synchronizes actions of subordinate elements.

\* 15. Company commander uses fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) as necessary to redirect actions of subordinate elements.

16. Company elements move tactically to assigned defensive positions.

- a. Use covered and concealed routes.
- b. Enforce camouflage, noise, light, and litter discipline.
- c. Maintain security during movement.

- d. Construct, establish, and or occupy primary defensive positions in accordance with (IAW) tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP) and or as directed.
- e. Maintain security (to include observation posts (Ops), hasty perimeter, or security patrols).
- f. Assign sectors of fire, engagement priorities, and other fire control measures.
- g. Position weapons systems so the required number of weapons, vehicles (as applicable), and platoons can effectively cover each target reference point (TRP).
- h. Ensure the company is tied in with the unit on its right and left.
- i. Emplace obstacles and other protective as required.
  - (1) Identify dead space and requirements to refine the location of the obstacle group and fire control measures.
  - (2) Ensure obstacles are covered by direct or indirect fire and under friendly observation.
  - (3) Ensure obstacles are concealed from enemy observation as much as possible.
  - (4) Ensure obstacles are employed in depth.
  - (5) Ensure obstacles are tied in with existing obstacles, if possible.
- j. Reconnoiter in front of the position to become familiar with the terrain and locate dead space.
- k. Clear fields of fire.

17. Company elements improve fighting positions.

- a. Adjust primary fighting positions as necessary to cover the sector of fire/engagement area identified by the company commander.
- b. Establish alternate and supplemental defensive positions in accordance with (IAW) tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP) and or as directed.
- c. Completes consolidated sector sketch cards and forwards copy to the company commander. (Platoon leader)
  - (1) Plots grid lines.
  - (2) Records individual and or vehicle positions.
  - (3) Records platoon sector or engagement area.
  - (4) Records target reference points (TRPs) (including location, range, and coverage responsibilities).
  - (5) Records range lines, trigger points, break points, and other key terrain features (these may coincide).
  - (6) Records locations of observation posts (OP) and obstacles and designates coverage responsibilities.
  - (7) Records dead space and covers with indirect fire targets.
  - (8) Records indirect fire targets, including final protective fires (FPF), if allocated.
  - (9) Records appropriate marginal information, including (as required) engagement criteria, effective range of available weapon systems, fire pattern, and disengagement criteria.

\* 18. Company commander consolidates sketch cards and finalizes the company fire plan.

- \* 19. As time permits, company commander directs platoons and or elements to take additional steps to improve positions IAW deliberate occupation of a battle position (BP).
  - a. Dig firing positions.
  - b. Establish communications.
  - c. Emplace camouflage, alarms, and decoys.
  - d. Pre stock ammunition and supplies.
  - e. Complete vehicle maintenance and prepare to fire checks.
- \* 20. Company commander adjusts readiness condition (REDCON) status in accordance with (IAW), mission enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil consideration (METT-TC), factors, operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO), and tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP) using radio, or other tactical means.
  - a. Assesses readiness requirements based on tactical situation and mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time and civil considerations (METT-TC) factors.
  - b. Directs company to assume appropriate readiness condition (REDCON) level.
- \* 21. Company commander coordinates and or synchronizes actions of subordinate elements.
- \* 22. Company commander uses fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) as necessary to redirect actions of subordinate elements.
- 23. Company conducts the defense.
  - a. Scans sector of responsibility.
  - b. Reports to commander using radio or other tactical means and takes one of the following actions in accordance with (IAW) commander's intent and or operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO).
  - c. Engages enemy forces using direct fires until enemy is destroyed or an order to cease fire is received.
  - d. Displaces as required.
- 24. Company consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.
- 25. Company secures enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.
- 26. Company treats and evacuates casualties.
- 27. Company processes captured documents and or equipment as required.
- 28. Company continues operations as directed.

**TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK**

<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

**Task Title**

- Defend in an Urban Environment (Infantry Company)
- Conduct an Area or Zone Reconnaissance (Infantry Company)
- Establish Observation Posts (Infantry Company)
- Report Tactical Information (Infantry Company)
- Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Infantry Company)
- Destroy Unit Vehicles and Equipment (Infantry Company)
- Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry Company)
- Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Infantry Company)
- Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)
- Establish Communications (Infantry Company)
- Operate a Command Post (Infantry Company)
- Prepare for Combat (Infantry Company)
- Maintain Operations Security (Infantry Company)

**TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINE**

**TASK:** Conduct a Raid (Infantry Company) (07-2-1135)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (CIRCLE)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is conducting operations as part of a larger force and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a raid at a specified location and time. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The company has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements, as required. Indirect fire support is available. The company has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company conducts the raid in accordance with (IAW) tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and or higher commander's guidance. The company surprises the enemy and assaults the objective to achieve the intent of the raid. The company does not become decisively engaged. The company complies with the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO GO</b>
<p>*1. Company leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using information that is gathered from maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.</p> <p>* 2. Company commander receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) and issues warning order (WARNO) to the company.</p> <p>* 3. Company commander plans using troop-leading procedures.</p> <p>a. Conducts analysis based on factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC).</p> <p>(1) Considers the enemy's capabilities, likely courses of action (COAs), and specific weapons capabilities.</p> <p>b. Conducts a map reconnaissance.</p> <p>(1) Identifies tentative objective rally point (ORP).</p> <p>(2) Identifies tentative support by fire and assault positions.</p> <p>(3) Identifies likely enemy avenues of approach.</p> <p>(4) Identifies routes to and from the objective rally point (ORP) and objective.</p> <p>(5) Marks tentative dismount points on maps as appropriate.</p> <p>c. Designates the main effort and supporting effort.</p> <p>d. Establishes control measures.</p> <p>e. Organizes the company as necessary to accomplish the mission and or compensate for combat losses.</p>		

<p>(1) Designates a support, assault, and breach element as required.</p> <p>(2) Identifies special teams.</p> <p>f. Coordinates and synchronizes activities within each battlefield operating system (BOS).</p> <p>g. Addresses actions on chance contact with the enemy.</p> <p>h. Plans and coordinates combat service support (CSS).</p> <p>i. Designates the withdrawal sequence.</p> <p>j. Plans the integration of direct and indirect fires in accordance with (IAW) higher headquarters' fire support plan.</p> <p>* 4. Company commander disseminates overlays, and other pertinent information to each platoon to keep them abreast of the situation.</p> <p>* 5. Company commander sets the conditions for the raid by employing one or more of the following.</p> <p>a. Screening or obscuring smoke to isolate enemy forces from friendly forces.</p> <p>b. Direct fires to fix adjacent or reserve enemy elements, preventing them from repositioning or reinforcing the objective area.</p> <p>c. Indirect fires, direct fires, or both to suppress and or destroy enemy forces on the objective.</p> <p>* 6. Company commander issues orders and instructions to include rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).</p> <p>a. Issues clear and concise taskings to platoons and or elements.</p> <p>7. Company prepares for mission.</p> <p>a. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.</p> <p>b. Conducts precombat checks.</p> <p>c. Conducts a rehearsal.</p> <p>* 8. Company commander issues a fragmentary order (FRAGO), as necessary, to address changes to the plan identified during the rehearsal.</p> <p>9. Company moves tactically to the objective rally point (ORP).</p> <p>a. Secures the objective rally point (ORP).</p> <p>b. Leaves a contingency plan with the senior company leader remaining at the objective rally point (ORP).</p> <p>* 10. Company commander or designated representative and reconnaissance element conducts the reconnaissance based on factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC).</p> <p>a. Pinpoints the objective.</p> <p>b. Establishes security at the objective.</p> <p>c. Selects security, support, and assault positions.</p> <p>d. Verifies and updates intelligence information.</p> <p>e. Leaves a surveillance team to observe the objective.</p> <p>f. Returns to the objective rally point (ORP).</p> <p>* 11. Company commander adjust the plan based on updated intelligence and reconnaissance effort.</p>		
---	--	--

a. Recommends to higher headquarters:

- (1) Aborting if the combat power of the enemy significantly alters the engagement ratio.
- (2) Aborting if enemy activity in the target area is significantly increased, movement of outside elements in the area is detected, or increased air coverage is present.
- (3) Continuing with the raid.

\* 12. Company commander updates the enemy situation.

\* 13. Company commander disseminates updated overlays, and other pertinent information.

\* 14. Company commander assigns positions for all elements.

15. Company elements move from the objective rally point (ORP) to support or assault positions.

- a. Move using the designated/appropriate technique.
- b. Attempt to breach any obstacle it cannot bypass.

\* 16. Company commander coordinates and or synchronizes actions of the support and assault elements.

\* 17. Company commander uses fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) as necessary to redirect actions of subordinate elements.

18. Company executes the raid.

a. Conducts the raid DISMOUNTED. (Raids are normally conducted dismounted.)

- (1) Employs indirect fires to isolate portions of the objective area, to obscure enemy element, and or to screen the movement of friendly elements.
- (2) Surprises the enemy.
- (3) Increases the volume and accuracy of fires to suppress and or destroy enemy vehicles and fighting positions (support elements and or platoons).
- (4) Conducts initial breach of obstacles, if required to penetrate the enemy's protective obstacle belt.
- (5) Lifts and shifts fires as assault element(s) moves beyond the obstacle using other tactical means.

Note: Both direct and indirect fires shift to suppress areas adjacent to the objective, to destroy enemy forces retreating, or to prevent enemy reinforcement of the objective.

- (6) Assaults onto the objective by conducting fire and maneuver (assaulting elements and or platoons).
- (7) Achieves the intent of the raid.

b. Conducts the raid MOUNTED.

- (1) Employs indirect fires to isolate portions of the objective area, to obscure enemy element, and or to screen the movement of friendly elements.
- (2) Maintains radio silence.

<p>(3) Increases the volume and accuracy of fires to suppress and or destroy enemy vehicles and fighting positions (support elements and or platoons).</p> <p>(4) Commences firing and advances toward the object (assault element).</p> <p>(5) Assaults onto the objective by conducting fire and maneuver (assaulting elements and or platoons).</p> <p>(6) Achieves the intent of the raid.</p> <p>19. Company occupies designated defensible positions, if necessary.</p> <p>*20. Company commander assesses the situation and reports to higher as required.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Compiles platoon leader situation reports (SITREPs).</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Submits updated situation report (SITREP) to the higher headquarters commander as necessary.</p> <p>21. Elements withdraw from the objective in the sequence designated in the fragmentary order (FRAGO) to a covered and concealed position away from the objective area.</p> <p>22. Company conducts consolidation and reorganization.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Maintains all around security to prevent and or defend an enemy counterattack.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Reestablishes the chain of command.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">c. Remains key weapons.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">d. Redistributes ammunition and equipment.</p> <p>23. Company secures enemy prisoners of war (EPW).</p> <p>24. Company treats and evacuates casualties.</p> <p>* 25. Company commander assesses and reports the status of personnel, ammunition, supplies, and essential equipment.</p> <p>26. Company continues operations as directed.</p>		
---	--	--

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

**Task Title**

LOCATE MINES BY VISUAL MEANS  
 NEUTRALIZE BOOBY TRAPS  
 LOCATE A TARGET BY GRID COORDINATES  
 LOCATE A TARGET BY SHIFT FROM A KNOWN POINT  
 Engage Targets with a PKM Machine Gun  
 Engage Targets with an AK-47 Rifle, Assault  
 Unload a PKM Machine Gun  
 Load an RPK Machine Gun  
 Engage Targets with an AK-47 Rifle, Assault  
 Engage Targets with a GP-30 Grenade  
 Employ Hand Grenades  
 Move as a Member of a Fire Team  
 Move under Direct Fire  
 Move Over, Through, or Around Obstacles (Except Minefields)  
 React to Indirect Fire While Dismounted  
 React to Flares  
 Select a Movement Route Using a Map  
 Issue an Oral Operation Order  
 Control Movement of a Fire Team  
 Select an Overwatch Position  
 Conduct the Maneuver of a Squad  
 Conduct Movement Techniques by a Platoon  
 Identify Terrain Features on a Map  
 Determine the Grid Coordinates of a Point on a Military Map  
 Determine a Magnetic Azimuth Using a Lensatic Compass  
 Determine a Location on the Ground by Terrain Association  
 Navigate from One Point on the Ground to another Point while Dismounted  
 Analyze Terrain  
 Establish a Helicopter Landing Point  
 Conduct a Leader's Reconnaissance  
 Control Organic fires  
 Plan for use of supporting fires  
 Conduct the maneuver of a platoon

### **SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

#### **Task Title**

Conduct a Deliberate Attack (Infantry Company)  
 Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Company)  
 Conduct an Area or Zone Reconnaissance (Infantry Company)  
 Report Tactical Information (Infantry Company)  
 Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Infantry Company)  
 Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Infantry Company)  
 Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry Company)  
 Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Antiarmor/Infantry Company)  
 Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Company)  
 Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Infantry Company)  
 Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Company)

### **SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS Cont'd**

#### **Task Title**

Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)  
Prepare for Combat (Infantry Company)  
Maintain operations Security (Infantry Company)

## **TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINE**

**TASK:** Conduct an Ambush (Infantry Company) (07-2-1243)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (CIRCLE)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is conducting operations as part of a larger force and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct an area, point, or antiarmor ambush at the location and time specified. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The company has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The company has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company emplaces and executes the ambush in accordance with (IAW) tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and or higher commander's guidance. The company surprises and kills or captures enemy forces in the engagement area(s) (EA). The company destroys or captures enemy equipment based on the commander's intent. The company complies with the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO GO</b>
<p>*1. Company leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using information that is gathered from maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.</p> <p>* 2. Company commander receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) and issues warning order (WARNO) to the company using radio or other tactical means.</p> <p>* 3. Company commander plans the ambush using troop-leading procedures.</p> <p>    a. Conducts a map reconnaissance.</p> <p>        (1) Identifies tentative objective rally point (ORP).</p> <p>        (2) Identifies tentative support by fire and assault positions.</p> <p>        (3) Identifies likely enemy avenues of approach.</p> <p>        (4) Identifies routes to and from the objective rally point (ORP) and objective.</p> <p>        (5) Marks tentative dismount points on maps as appropriate.</p> <p>    b. Plans for.</p> <p>        (1) Covering the entire kill zone by fire.</p> <p>        (2) Using existing or reinforcing obstacles to keep the enemy in the kill zone.</p>		

- (3) Protecting the assault and support elements with mines, Claymore, or explosives.
- (4) Using security elements to isolate the kill zone.
- (5) Assaulting into the kill zone to search dead and wounded, assemble prisoners, and collect equipment. (The assault element must be able to move quickly through its own protective obstacles).
- (6) Timing the actions of all elements of the company to preclude loss of surprise and to ensure withdrawal before any counterattack force can arrive at the kill zone.
- (7) Using only one platoon and or element to conduct the entire ambush and rotating platoons and or elements over time from the objective rally point (ORP). (This technique is useful when the ambush must be manned for a long time.)

c. Selects the type of ambush to be used, if not directed by higher headquarters.

- (1) Selects point ambush-Elements and or soldiers deploy to attack an enemy in a single kill zone.
- (2) Selects area ambush- Elements and or soldiers deploy in two or more related point ambushes based on real time intelligence using one of the following techniques.
  - (a) Sequential (linear in type).
  - (b) Concentrated (centralized in type).
  - (c) Distributed (decentralized in type).
- (3) Selects antiarmor ambush Organized around the company's antiarmor assets. The company commander.
  - (a) Consider additional weapons available to supplement company fires.
  - (b) Consider carefully positioning all antiarmor weapons to ensure the best shot (rear, flank, or top).
  - (c) Consider using the remainder of the company as support and security elements.

d. Determines a tentative ambush formation.

e. Determines weapons and equipment available to the enemy, if possible.

f. Determines enemy's route and direction of movement.

g. Determines and or projects times that the targeted unit will reach or pass specified points along the route.

h. Determines a scheme of maneuver. (For area ambushes.)

i. Develops criteria for initiation of the ambush.

j. Designates the engagement techniques, if different from tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP).

k. Plans and marks withdrawal routes.

l. Determines actions in the kill zone.

m. Organizes the company as necessary to accomplish the mission and or compensate for combat losses.

- (1) Designates an assault element, support element, and security element.

n. Plans indirect fires in the kill zone to destroy the enemy and cover the withdrawal of the company.

o. Coordinates passage of lines through friendly units as required.

- p. Addresses actions on chance contact with the enemy.
- q. Coordinates and synchronizes activities within each battlefield operating system (BOS).
- r. Plans and coordinates combat service support (CSS).

- \* 4. Company commander disseminates overlays, and other pertinent information to each platoon to keep them abreast of the situation.
- \* 5. Company commander issues orders and instructions to include rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).
  - a. Issues clear and concise taskings to platoons and or elements.
- 6. Company conducts a rehearsal.
- \* 7. Company commander issues a fragmentary order (FRAGO) as necessary to address changes to the plan identified during the rehearsal.
- 8. Company conducts tactical movement to the objective rally point (ORP).
  - a. Conducts passage of lines through friendly units as required.
  - b. Secures and occupies the objective rally point (ORP) in accordance with (IAW) the order or tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP).
  - c. Designates the objective rally point (ORP) chain of command.
  - d. Issues a contingency plan to the objective rally point (ORP) leadership.
- \* 9. Company commander or designated representative and reconnaissance element conducts the reconnaissance based on factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time and civil considerations (METT-TC).
  - a. Forms a security element for the party.
  - b. Conducts a passage of lines, if required.
  - c. Pinpoints the objective and or kill zone.
  - d. Establishes security at the objective and or kill zone location.
  - e. Verifies and updates intelligence information.
  - f. Selects security, support, and assault positions.
    - (1) Selects security position(s) that.
      - (a) Provide early warning of enemy approach into the kill zone or toward any company element.
      - (b) Provide covered and concealed positions.
      - (c) Allow elements to secure the company, prevents escape from the kill zone, and prevents reinforcement of the enemy in the kill zone.
    - (2) Selects support position(s) that.
      - (a) Permit observation and effective fires into the kill zone.
      - (b) Provide cover and concealment.
    - (3) Selects assault position(s) that.
      - (a) Provide cover and concealment.
      - (b) Allow observation and fire into the kill zone.
      - (c) Are close enough for rapid assault into the kill zone, if planned.
      - (d) Are protected by an armored or vehicular obstacle

(natural or man made), if the enemy will be mounted or in armored vehicles.

g. Selects a suitable kill zone that.

(1) Is located on a canalized avenue of approach or natural line of drift.

(2) Restricts enemy maneuver on the ambush site.

h. Selects primary and alternate covered and concealed routes to and from all positions and the objective rally point (ORP).

i. Leaves a surveillance team to observe the objective.

j. Returns to the objective rally point (ORP) undetected.

\* 10. Company commander adjust the plan based on updated intelligence and reconnaissance effort.

a. Updates the enemy situation.

b. Disseminates updated overlays, and other pertinent information.

c. Allows time for subordinate leaders to disseminate any modifications to the plan.

d. Assigns security, support, and assault positions.

e. Designates withdrawal routes back to the objective rally point (ORP).

f. Designates control measures at the ambush site.

g. Designates the ambush formation based on his estimate of the situation.

h. Designates a security element to stay in the objective rally point (ORP), if the company intends to return to the objective rally point (ORP) after completion of the ambush.

i. Reports readiness to execute to higher headquarters using other radio or tactical means.

\* 11. Company commander coordinates and or synchronizes actions of subordinate elements.

\* 12. Company commander uses fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) as necessary to redirect actions of subordinate elements.

\* 13. Security element leader moves his element from the objective rally point (ORP) and occupies their positions.

a. Departs the objective rally point (ORP) and moves tactically to designated positions.

b. Positions early warning detection devices first.

c. Secures the flanks of the ambush site and provides detection and early warning of enemy approach.

d. Ensures coverage of dismounted avenues of approach in the ambush site.

e. Observes noise and light discipline.

f. Designates individual sectors of observation and fire and emplaces sector stakes.

g. Directs the emplacement of obstacles, and early warning devices, as the enemy situation dictates.

h. Checks the positions from the enemy side to verify concealment, if possible.

- i. Positions teams/soldiers for best control.
- j. Checks all target acquisition and night observation devices.
- k. Maintains communication with the company commander.
- l. Ensures the occupation and establishment of the positions is undetected by the enemy.
- m. Informs the company commander when the positions are established.

\* 14. When the security elements are in position, or on the company commander's order, the support and assault element leaders move their elements from the objective rally point (ORP) and occupy their positions by the time specified in the order.

- a. Move tactically to the positions.
- b. Designate the individual sectors of observation and fire, and emplace sector sketches.
- c. Emplace obstacles, and early warning devices, as the threat dictates.
- d. Check positions from the enemy side to verify concealment, if possible. (Leaders do not enter the kill zone.)
- e. Positions supporting mortars to provide fire into the kill zone and to support the security elements with indirect fire.

\* 15. Company commander ensures that he and subordinate leaders position themselves for command and control.

\* 16. Company commander or designated representative supervise final preparations.

- a. Ensures subordinate leaders.
  - (1) Check all target acquisition and night observation devices.
  - (2) Maintain communications with the company commander.
  - (3) Ensure the occupation and establishment of the positions are undetected by the enemy.
  - (4) Report to the company commander when the positions are established.

17. Company maintains operations security, and executes active deception to deceive the enemy as to the ambush location and the strength of the attack.

18. Security element detects the enemy and alerts the company commander.

- a. Reports the size of the target and the direction of movement.
- b. Reports any special weapons or equipment carried.

\* 19. Company commander informs higher headquarters that the enemy has been detected. (This is not to obtain approval to conduct the ambush. The company received the mission by order from higher headquarters.)

- a. Uses arm and hand signals to notify the rest of the company.
- b. Assesses the situation and determines if the ambush should be executed.

- |   |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| <p>* 20. Company commander initiates the ambush, or authorizes a subordinate leader to initiate the ambush.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Surprises the enemy.</li> <li>b. Initiates the ambush with the largest casualty producing weapon available. If ambushing mounted or armored elements, the leader initiates the ambush with multiple, simultaneous antiarmor shots.</li> <li>c. Ensures assault and support elements deliver accurate fire. All weapons engage targets that are suitable to their characteristics.</li> <li>d. Uses the security elements to block any enemy attempts to maneuver and engage the ambush forces, to prevent reinforcement of the enemy in the kill zone, and to block escape from the kill zone.</li> <li>e. Uses supporting mortars and other indirect fire support to support the ambush.</li> <li>f. Employs the reserves to block enemy escape from the kill zone, to prevent enemy reinforcement of the kill zone, or to block counterattacks, if needed.</li> <li>g. Orders lifting and shifting of all fires using radio or other tactical means, if the company will assault the target.</li> <li>h. Signals the support element to lift or shift all supporting fires using radio or other tactical means.</li> </ol> <p>21. On order from the company commander, the assault element assaults the target before it can react effectively.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Kills or captures enemy forces.</li> <li>b. Destroys or captures enemy equipment and documents, within the commander's intent.</li> </ol> <p>22. Designated elements accomplish their tasks immediately after the assault element establishes local security beyond the kill zone.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Process enemy prison of wars (EPWs).</li> <li>b. Treat and evacuate casualties.</li> </ol> <p>*23. Company commander signals for withdrawal from the ambush site.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Withdraws to objective rally point (ORP).</li> <li>b. Covers the withdrawal of the assault element from the kill zone from the support position using pre planned indirect fire.</li> <li>c. Uses planned indirect fire to complete destruction of the enemy, if needed.</li> </ol> <p>24. Company reorganizes and consolidates.</p> <p>*25. Company commander consolidates priority intelligence requirements (PIR) reports.</p> <p>*26. Company commander reports the results of the ambush and company status using radio or other tactical means.</p> <p>27. Company processes and or secures captured documents and or equipment in accordance with (IAW) the operation order (OPORD) or tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP).</p> |  |  |
|---|--|--|

28. Company continues operations as directed.		
---	--	--

TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK						
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

**Task Title**

- A Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Patrol Operations (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Tactical Movement (Infantry Company)
- Conduct an Area or Zone Reconnaissance (Infantry Company)
- Report Tactical Information (Infantry Company)
- Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Infantry Company)
- Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Infantry Company)
- Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry Company)
- Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Infantry Company)
- Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)
- Prepare for Combat (Infantry Company)
- Maintain Operations Security (Infantry Company)



- and or compensate for combat losses.
- d. Addresses actions on chance contact with the enemy.
- .e. Disseminates applicable reports, overlays, and other pertinent information to each squad to keep them abreast of the situation.
- f. Plans triggers or signals for lifting and shifting direct and indirect fires.
- g. Develops control measures.
- h. Ensures observers are positioned to adjust indirect fires, if applicable.

\*4. Company commander or designated representative conducts a reconnaissance.

- a. Selects attack by fire (ABF) a position that allow the company to effectively engage the enemy and that provides adequate cover and concealment.
- b. Establishes security at the attack by fire (ABF) position.
- c. Leaves security at the attack by fire (ABF) position.
- d. Updates intelligence information.
- e. Returns to the company position.

\* 5. Company commander adjusts the attack by fire (ABF) plan, if necessary, based on updated intelligence.

\* 6. Company commander issues orders and instructions to include rules of engagements (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).

7. Company conducts a rehearsal.

\* 8. Company commander issues fragmentary orders (FRAGOs), as necessary, to address changes to the plan identified during the rehearsal.

9. Company conducts tactical movement to attack by fire (ABF) position.

- a. Employs appropriate formation and movement technique.
- b. Uses covered and concealed routes to prevent the enemy element from effectively engaging the company.
- c. Orients weapon systems to provide 360-degree security during movement.

10. Company occupies attack by fire (ABF) position.

- a. Confirms position meets the following tactical considerations:
  - (1) Position allows the company to place effective fires on the enemy.
  - (2) Position facilitates weapon standoff.
  - (3) Position is located on terrain affording cover and concealment.
- b. Conducts hasty occupation of the attack by fire (ABF) position.
- c. Designates target reference points (TRP), sectors of fire, and tentative firing positions.
- d. Begins scanning sectors of fire as designated by the commander or tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP).

11. Company observes the designated engagement areas or sectors of responsibility.

- a. Detects all enemy entering the area.
- b. Notifies supported, flanking, and higher units of detected enemy as required.

12. Company executes the attack by fire against enemy armor.

- a. Acquires, suppresses, and or destroys identified enemy elements using available weapon systems.
- b. Employs appropriate weapon systems to destroy armored vehicles and fortified positions.
- c. Employs appropriate weapon systems to suppress identified enemy elements or to destroy light skinned vehicles, exposed positions, and dismounted elements.
- d. Calls for and adjusts indirect fires onto the enemy.
- e. Maneuvers to alternate positions as necessary to maintain effective fires on the enemy or to maintain survivability.
- f. Shifts, refocuses, and redistributes direct fires as necessary to maintain target effects on the enemy.

\* 13. Company commander directs the attack by fire until all enemy elements are destroyed, fixed, or suppressed or the order to lift fires is received.

- a. Focuses and distributes direct fires and shifts, refocuses, and redistributes fires to maintain suppression of the enemy or to destroy enemy forces.
- b. Shifts indirect fires to suppress or destroy enemy vehicles or positions.
- c. Lifts fires to facilitate the movement of friendly elements or when target effects are achieved.
- d. Issues additional fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) to direct or retask subordinate elements as required.
- e. Orders a cease-fire once the enemy is destroyed or on order from the commander.
- f. Sends spot reports (SPOTREPs) and updates situation reports (SITREPs) and makes recommendations to the higher commander as required.

14. Company consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.

15. Company secures enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.

16. Company treats and evacuates casualties.

17. Company processes captured documents and or equipment as required.

18. Company continues operations as directed.

TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK						
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

“\*\*” indicates a leader task step.

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

#### Task Title

Engage Targets with an RPK Machine Gun  
 Maintain an AGS-17 Anti-tank Gun  
 Load an AGS-17 Anti-tank Gun  
 Engage Targets with an AGS-17 Anti-tank Gun  
 Perform Immediate Action for an AGS-17 Anti-tank Gun System Misfire  
 Perform a System Self-Test on an AGS-17 Anti-tank Gun System  
 Move under direct fire  
 Move over, through, or around obstacles (Except Minefields)  
 React to Indirect Fire While Dismounted  
 React to Flares  
 Select a Movement Route Using a Map  
 Coordinate with an Adjacent Platoon  
 Determine a Magnetic Azimuth Using a Lensatic Compass  
 Navigate from One Point on the Ground to another Point While Mounted  
 Perform Surveillance without the Aid of Electronic Devices  
 Analyze Terrain

### SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

#### Task Title

Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (Infantry Company)  
 Conduct Tactical Movement (Infantry Company)  
 Employ Obstacle(s) (Infantry Company)  
 Conduct an Area or Zone Reconnaissance (Infantry Company)  
 Establish Observation Posts (Infantry Company)  
 Report Tactical Information (Infantry Company)  
 Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Infantry Company)  
 Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Infantry Company)  
 Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry Company)  
 Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Infantry Company)  
 Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Infantry Company)  
 Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Company)  
 Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)  
 Prepare for Combat (Infantry Company)  
 Maintain Operations Security (Infantry Company)



b. Obtains, if available, from higher headquarters or other intelligence assets.

(1) Aerial photographs.

(2) Civilian maps and diagrams.

(3) Location(s) of key terrain and or buildings; electrical, fuel storage, water, and communications facilities; and protected buildings and or areas.

c. Identifies mobility restrictions for both mounted and dismounted operations.

d. Clarifies priority intelligence requirements (PIR).

e. Confirms any changes to the higher headquarters and company task or purpose.

f. Confirms any changes to the scheme of maneuver.

\* 4. Company commander plans using troop-leading procedures.

a. Conducts analysis based on factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC).

(1) Considers the enemy's capabilities, likely courses of action (COAs), and specific weapons capabilities.

b. Conducts a map reconnaissance.

(1) Identifies tentative objective rally point (ORP).

(2) Identifies tentative security, support by fire, and assault positions.

(3) Identifies likely enemy avenues of approach.

(4) Identifies routes to and from the objective rally point (ORP) and objective.

(5) Marks (on maps as appropriate).

(a) Tentative dismount points.

(b) Subway systems, railways, and mass transit routes.

(c) Underground water, sewer, and utility systems.

(d) Electrical power stations and emergency services.

(e) Fuel supply and storage facilities.

(f) Mass communications facilities.

(g) Stadiums, parks, and open fields that may be used as a landing zone.

(h) Buildings protected by the law of land warfare.

c. Develops control measures to ensure tempo, coordination, and synchronization of the attack.

d. Plans for phasing of the attack.

(1) Includes a scheme of maneuver that exploits enemy flanks, gaps, and vulnerabilities.

(2) Addresses approach to the objective(s).

(3) Plans for isolating the enemy force or objective.

(4) Plans for securing a foothold on or in the objective.

(5) Plans for clearing the objective of all enemy, if required by the commander's intent.

e. Plans all around security measures and protection of flanks, rear areas, and lines of communications (LOCs).

f. Plans breaching operations.

g. Plans for positioning and movement of command posts (CPs).

h. Determines civil-military considerations.

- i. Determines requirements for and requests additional forces and special equipment.
- j. Plans for reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S).
- k. Designates the main effort and supporting effort.
- l. Plans the integration of direct and indirect fires IAW higher headquarters' fire support plan.
  - (1) Includes screening or obscuring smoke to isolate enemy forces from friendly forces as necessary.
- m. Plans and coordinates combat service support (CSS).
- n. Organizes the company as necessary to accomplish the mission and or compensate for combat losses.
  - (1) Designates a support, assault, and breach element, as required.
  - (2) Designates a reserve, if required.
- o. Plans for positioning reserve, if applicable.
- p. Addresses actions on chance contact with the enemy.
- q. Coordinates and synchronizes activities within each battlefield operating system (BOS).

\* 5. Company commander disseminates overlays, and other pertinent information to each element to keep them abreast of the situation.

\* 6. Company commander issues orders and instructions to include rule of engagement (ROE).
 

- a. Issues clear and concise taskings to platoons and or elements.

7. Company conducts a rehearsal.

\* 8. Company commander issues a fragmentary order (FRAGO), as necessary, to address changes to the plan identified during the rehearsal.

9. Company moves tactically to objective rally point (ORP).
 

- a. Secures objective rally point (ORP).

\*10. Company commander or designated representative and reconnaissance element conducts the reconnaissance based on factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC).
 

- a. Pinpoints the objective.
- b. Establishes security at the objective.
- c. Selects security, support, and assault positions.
- d. Determines the enemy's size, location, disposition, and most probable course of action on the objective.
- e. Determines where the enemy is most vulnerable to attack and where the support element can best place fires on the objective.
- f. Determines whether to conduct the assault mounted or dismounted, if applicable.
- g. Verifies and updates intelligence information.
- h. Leaves a surveillance team to observe the objective.
- i. Returns to the objective rally point (ORP).

\* 11. Company commander adjust the plan based on updated intelligence

and reconnaissance effort.

\* 12. Company commander updates the enemy situation.

\* 13. Company commander disseminates updated overlays, and other pertinent information.

14. Company moves tactically to assault, support, and breach positions and or dismount point(s). Uses covered and concealed routes.

\* 15. Company commander or designated representative positions support elements and indirect fire assets to isolate the objective and overwatch the breach and assault elements during movement to the objective.

a. Employs the appropriate weapon system in support by fire (SBF) positions to destroy or suppress any known enemy positions in accordance with (IAW) current doctrine.

b. Employs snipers, if available, to assist with overwatch and isolation of the objective.

c. Isolates the objective, using direct-fire and indirect-fire support.

(1) Employs indirect fires and or smoke to suppress, obscure, or destroy enemy elements.

d. Overwatches the movement of breach and assault elements.

e. Employs element(s) to observe identified subterranean entry and or exit points.

f. Employs element(s), if required, to breach walls and or obstacles.

\*16. Company commander synchronizes the efforts maneuver elements with supporting engineer efforts.

\* 17. Company commander directs the assault to begin.

a. Directs the support element to initiate fires to suppress the objective.

b. Employs smoke to conceal the assaulting platoons.

c. Positions himself and his key subordinates executive officer (XO) and first sergeant (1SG) where they can control the attack.

d. Uses fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) as necessary to redirect actions of subordinate elements.

e. Positions the reserve well forward for quick response.

18. If assaulting a building(s), breach element conducts tactical movement from the breach position and or dismount point to the objective. (May include engineers.)

a. Initiates movement after enemy defensive positions are suppressed, obscured.

b. Uses covered and concealed routes that do not mask friendly suppressive fires.

c. Crosses open areas rapidly using concealment of smoke and suppression of enemy targets by the support element.

d. Breaches and enters the building at the designated entry point.

e. Secures and maintains a foothold for the assault element.

f. Provides additional support for the assault element.

19. Assault elements conducts tactical movement from the assault position and or dismount point to the objective.

- a. Trails the breach element in accordance with (IAW) factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil consideration (METT-TC) if assaulting a building(s).
- b. Engages enemy forces with appropriate weapon systems to destroy or force withdrawal of sniper teams, and antiarmor teams within sector.
- c. Provides additional security and or support (if needed) to the breach element.
- d. Maintains 360 degree security.
- e. Monitors and controls the flow of battle to prevent potential fratricide situations.
- f. Seizes a foothold on the objective.
- g. Signals the supporting fires to be lifted and shifted when they endanger the assault element.
- h. Kills, captures, destroys, or forces the withdrawal of the enemy as required by the commander's intent.
- i. Clears building(s) room by room in accordance with (IAW), tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), if objective is a building(s).
- j. Reports to the commander when the objective is secured.

\* 20 Company commander commits the reserve, as the situation requires.

- a. Exploits success or an enemy weakness.
- b. Supports a forward element with fire and or maneuver.
- c. Assumes the mission of another element (building clearance).
- d. Maintains the momentum of the attack (seize a key building and or terrain).
- e. Holds buildings and or terrain seized by another element.
- f. Defeats or blocks counterattacks.

21. Company continues the attack until it overcomes all organized resistance.

- a. Moves to exploit the attack based on the commander's intent (orient on the enemy, terrain, or friendly forces).

\* 22. Company commander positions personnel to cover enemy routes of counterattack and infiltration into the objective.

\* 23. Company commander keeps the higher headquarters command post (CP) informed of the company's status and tactical situation in accordance with (IAW) the order, guidance, and or tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP).

- a. Sends updated situation reports (SITREPs) as necessary during the operation.

24. Company consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.

- a. Reestablishes the chain of command in accordance with (IAW) the unit standing operation procedure (SOP).
- b. Redistributes ammunition and requests resupply, as required.

25. Company secures and evacuates enemy prisoner of wars (EPWs) and noncombatants as necessary.						
26. Company treats and evacuates casualties.						
27. Company processes any captured documents and or equipment.						
28. Company continues operations as directed.						
<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

**Task Title**

- Conduct Tactical Movement in a Built-up Area (Infantry Company)
- Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Company)
- Conduct an Area or Zone Reconnaissance (Infantry Company)
- Reconnoiter a Built-up Area (Infantry Company)
- Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Infantry Company)
- Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Infantry Company)
- Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry Company)
- Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Infantry Company)
- Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)
- Prepare for Combat (Infantry Company)
- Maintain Operations Security (Infantry Company)



- b. Conducts a map reconnaissance, if practical.
  - (1) Identifies tentative objective rally point (ORP), if used and observation posts (OPs).
  - (2) Identifies tentative, security, support by fire, and assault positions.
  - (3) Identifies likely enemy avenues of approach.
  - (4) Identifies routes to and from the objective rally point (ORP) and observation posts (Ops).
  - (5) Marks tentative dismount points on maps as appropriate.
  - (6) Marks routes between primary, alternate, and supplementary positions.
  - (7) Marks withdrawal routes.
- c. Plans and coordinates indirect fire support and or close air support, if available.
  - (1) Covers likely avenues of approach.
  - (2) Covers obstacles.
  - (3) Covers counterattack plans.
- d. Identifies direct fire responsibilities.
- e. Plans the integration of direct and indirect fires in accordance with (IAW) higher headquarters' fire support plan.
- f. Analyzes the defensive sector to determine the best use of obstacles and supporting fires.
- g. Plans and coordinates combat service support (CSS).
- h. Prepositions supplies and equipment (depending on the length of the mission).
  - (1) Prepositions the following as required.
    - (a) Barrier material (sandbags, barbed wire).
    - (b) Munitions (especially grenades).
    - (c) Food and water.
    - (d) Medical supplies.
    - (e) Fire fighting equipment.
- i. Coordinates and synchronizes activities within each battlefield operating system (BOS).
- j. Coordinates with adjacent units using other tactical means.
  - (1) Determines responsibility for overlapping enemy avenues of approach.
  - (2) Exchanges information on observation post (OP) locations, unit signals, and passage points.
- k. Organizes the company as necessary to accomplish the mission and compensate for combat losses.
  - (1) Designates a reserve, if required.
- l. Addresses actions on chance contact with the enemy.
- m. Develops a counterattack plan for each likely enemy situation.
  - (1) Ensures the counterattack force is allocated demolitions, antiarmor assets, and extra grenades.
  - (2) Designates and, if appropriate, marks routes for counterattack.
  - (3) Ensures the counterattack plan is rehearsed during the day and at night.

\* 4. Company commander disseminates overlays, and other pertinent

information to each platoon to keep them abreast of the situation.

\* 5. Company commander issues orders and instructions to include rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).

a. Issues clear and concise taskings to platoons/elements.

6. Company conducts a rehearsal. Rehearses plan during the day and at night, if possible.

7. Company moves tactically to objective rally point (ORP), if used.

a. Secures objective rally point (ORP).

\* 8. Company commander or designated representative and reconnaissance element conducts the reconnaissance (based on factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC).

a. Pinpoints the objective.

b. Establishes security at the objective.

c. Selects primary and alternate security, support, and assault positions.

d. Selects observation post (OP) positions.

e. Verifies and updates intelligence information.

f. Leaves a surveillance team to observe the objective.

g. Returns to the objective rally point (ORP) or company position.

\* 9. Company commander adjust the plan based on updated intelligence and reconnaissance effort.

\* 10. Company commander updates the enemy situation.

\* 11. Company commander disseminates updated overlays, and other pertinent information.

12. Company moves to and occupies positions and sets up security.

a. Emplaces at least one observation post (OP) so the main body is warned before an enemy attack.

b. Emplaces the company early warning system or devices.

c. Sets up the chemical alarm system for monitoring.

\* 13. Company commander coordinates and or synchronizes actions of subordinate elements.

\* 14. Company commander uses fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) as necessary to redirect actions of subordinate elements.

\* 15. Company commander or designated representative positions crew served weapons and special weapons.

a. Positions antiarmor weapons to cover armored avenues of approach.

b. Positions machine guns/RPK to cover dismounted avenues of approach.

c. Ensures weapons are mutually supporting and tied in with adjacent

elements.

- \* 16. Company commander or designated representative positions the company command post (CP) in a covered and concealed location.
- \* 17. Company commander or designated representative assigns positions to platoons and or elements.
  - a. Assigns each platoon and or element a position with primary and secondary sectors of fire.
  - b. Ensures positions permit interlocking fires.
  - c. Ensure positions are improved as time permits.
- \* 18. Company commander positions himself so he can view and control the battle.
- 19. Company installs wire communications, if required/directed.
  - a. Lays wire between the company command post (CP) and the platoons.
  - b. Employs switchboards or hot loops as appropriate.
- 20. Company constructs barriers and obstacles to deny the enemy access to streets, underground passages, buildings, including rooftops and in all buildings, and to slow his movement.
  - a. Integrates barriers and or obstacles with the company's key weapons.
  - b. Covers all barriers and obstacles by fire and or observation (both direct and indirect), mines, and booby traps.
- 21. Company improves movement routes within company positions.
  - a. Improves routes by digging trenches, using sewers and tunnels, creating mouse holes, and emplacing ropes for climbing and rappelling.
- 22. Company conducts security and patrolling activities.
- 23. Company defends against an assault.
  - a. Uses direct and indirect fire to separate enemy fighting vehicles from dismounted personnel that are providing security for the vehicles.
  - b. Executes the company or higher headquarters' barrier plan to impede and canalize vehicles and personnel into planned fires.
  - c. Employs smoke to obscure enemy observation.
  - d. Engages vehicles with organic and attached antiarmor weapons (simultaneously, if possible), command detonated mines and demolitions, and field-expedient antiarmor weapons.
  - e. Commits the reserve to defeat or block a penetration, if required.
  - f. Moves elements, as necessary, between primary, alternate, and supplementary positions to complete the destruction or expulsion of the enemy force.
  - g. Uses direct and indirect final protective fires (FPFs) to suppress, block, and destroy dismounted enemy troop formations or force them to withdraw.

<p>h. Prevents the enemy from gaining a foothold or any penetrations of its position.</p> <p>i. Prevents the enemy from moving through the area.</p> <p>24. Company consolidates and reorganizes during lulls in the fighting.</p> <p>a. Transmits status reports, requests for support and resupply, and enemy information to higher headquarter's command post (CP) in accordance with (IAW) the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP) and current orders.</p> <p>b. Replaces damaged barriers and obstacles, repairs positions, restores communications, and posts, observation posts (Ops) that were withdrawn during the engagement.</p> <p>c. Resumes security and patrolling activities.</p> <p>d. Continues to defend until a change of mission is received.</p> <p>25. Company secures enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.</p> <p>26. Company treats and evacuates casualties.</p> <p>27. Company processes captured documents and or equipment as required.</p> <p>28. Company continues operations as directed.</p>		
--	--	--

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

### **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

**Task Title**

- Supervise Construction of a Fighting Position
- Establish an Observation Post
- Coordinate with an Adjacent Platoon
- Challenge Persons Entering Your Area
- Control Organic Fires
- Plan for Use of Supporting Fires
- Conduct a Defense by a Squad
- Reorganize a Squad Following Enemy Contact While in the Defense

## **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS Cont'd**

### **Task Title**

Conduct a Defense by a Platoon  
Consolidate a Platoon Following Enemy Contact While in the Defense  
Reorganize a Platoon Following Enemy Contact While in the Defense  
Employ Field-Expedient Early Warning Devices  
REQUEST MEDICAL EVACUATION  
Request Medical Evacuation  
INSTALL A HOT LOOP

## **SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

### **Task Title**

Conduct Patrol Operations (Infantry Company)  
Conduct Tactical Movement in a Built-up Area (Infantry Company)  
Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Company)  
Employ Obstacle(s) (Infantry Company)  
Reconnoiter a Built-up Area (Infantry Company)  
Report Tactical Information (Infantry Company)  
Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Infantry Company)  
Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Infantry Company)  
Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry Company)  
Secure Civilians during Operations (Antiarmor/Infantry Company)  
Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Antiarmor/Infantry Company)  
Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Company)  
Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Infantry Company)  
Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Company)  
Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)  
Operate a Command Post (Antiarmor/Infantry Company)  
Prepare for Combat (Infantry Company)  
Employ Camouflage, Concealment, and Deception Techniques (Infantry Company)  
Maintain Operations Security (Infantry Company)



- c. Identifies information requirements (for example, commander's critical information requirements [CCIR], other information requirements [IR]).
- d. Identifies restrictions on types and extent of information about US Government policy and his company's operations furnished to other than military units.
- e. Identifies an intended outcome (end state) for each meeting to guide each team.
- f. Establishes times and locations for initial contacts with selected elements.

2. Company prepares for coordination activities.

- a. Organizes coordination teams.
- b. Provides communication equipment and transportation for coordination teams.
- c. Provides appropriate maps, overlays, and copies of orders as necessary.
- d. Ensures coordination team understands what information the higher headquarters commander has restricted from sharing.
- e. Ensures coordination teams know the limits on company commander's authority based on the peace mandate, Mission Instructions, and higher headquarters orders as well as, the current political and military situation in the area of operation (AO).
- f. Ensures teams understand the intended outcome for each meeting.
- g. Provides interpreter for each meeting, if needed.

3. Company conducts coordination.

- a. Maintains image of cooperation:
  - (1) Responds quickly to all requests for coordination.
  - (2) Complies with rules of engagement (ROE), and or rules of interaction (ROI), orders, guidance from higher headquarters.
  - (3) Establishes an on-call capability to respond to coordination requirements that may develop in the area of operation (AO).
- b. Requests for liaison if consistent with the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI), order, and or guidance from higher headquarters.
- c. Monitors liaison activities.
  - (1) Updates company situation map with current locations of liaison teams.
  - (2) Maintains communications with liaison teams.
  - (3) Ensures liaison teams do not deploy beyond range of company quick reaction force (QRF) response capability.

4. Coordination teams exchange information with designated organizations.

- a. Report to appropriate official or leader.
- b. Contact staff or functional leaders as appropriate, for example, logistics officer (of a military organization), or police chief of a town.
- c. Clarify issues and obtain requested information for the company commander.
- d. Provide information in accordance with the company commander's guidance.

<p>e. Keep abreast of the company's situation and provide information updates to the designated organization.</p> <p>f. Report results to higher headquarters in accordance with (IAW), tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP).</p> <p>5. Coordination teams conduct meetings.</p> <p>a. Record desired information.</p> <p>b. Understand the other party's position accurately.</p> <p>c. Enter into agreements consistent with authority.</p> <p>d. Clarify issues and obtain requested information for the company commander.</p> <p>e. Avoid confrontation.</p> <p>f. Demonstrate resolve, confidence, commitment, and sensitivity for local customs of parties to the negotiation.</p> <p>g. Respond immediately to any serious breach of trust or when deceived.</p> <p>h. Report results to higher headquarters in accordance with (IAW) tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP).</p>		
---	--	--

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**



d. Conducts continuous assessment during the operation for risk reduction.

- \* 5. Company commander assess identified risk or safety hazards.
  - a. Determines risk that can be eliminated or avoided.
  - b. Assess the severity of hazards that cannot be eliminated or avoided.
  - c. Compares identified risk to the higher commander's acceptable risk level based on stated mission objectives.
  - d. Describes operations in terms of its risk level (extremely high, high, medium, low) based upon the factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC).
  - e. Computes overall risk status.
  - f. Identifies aspects of the operation that may be affected by the primary causes of fratricide.
    - (1) Failures in the direct and indirect fire control plan.
    - (2) Land navigation failures.
    - (3) Failures in combat identification.
    - (4) Inadequate control measures.
    - (5) Failures in reporting and communications.
    - (6) Weapons control status.
    - (7) Battlefield hazards.
    - (8) Adjacent units.

\* 6. Commander develops controls and makes risk decisions to eliminate or reduce risk and safety hazards.

Note: Only the commander can make final risk decisions. He alone decides if controls are sufficient and acceptable and whether to accept the resulting residual risk.

- a. Selects course of action (COAs) that achieves the commander's intent and minimizes the risk.
- b. Develops procedures that reduce risk.
- c. Develops controls that specify who, what, where, when, why, and how each control will be used.
- d. Integrates controls into rehearsals and mission executions.

7. Company personnel implements risk control procedures.

- \* 8. Commander supervises and evaluates risk management controls.
  - a. Supervises mission rehearsals and execution to ensure combat safety standards are maintained.
  - b. Evaluates the effectiveness of controls and adjust as necessary.

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**



<p>e. Addresses actions on chance contact with the enemy.</p> <p>* 4. Company commander disseminates reports overlays, and other pertinent information to each platoon to keep them abreast of the situation.</p> <p>* 5. Company commander assigns personnel to perform quartering party duties in accordance with (IAW) guidance and or tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP).</p> <p>a. Briefs personnel on company requirements for the quartering party.</p> <p>* 6. Company commander issues orders and instructions to include rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).</p> <p>a. Issues clear and concise taskings to platoons and or elements.</p> <p>7. Company conducts a rehearsal.</p> <p>8. Quartering party moves to and clears the release point (RP).</p> <p>a. Assists in reconnaissance of the route and the proposed assembly area (AA).</p> <p>b. Moves to and occupies assembly area (AA).</p> <p>c. Assists in improving and marking entrances, exits, and internal routes.</p> <p>d. Assists in marking obstacles, mines, and contaminated areas.</p> <p>e. Selects and marks tentative company vehicle, weapons, and dismounted team positions in accordance with (IAW), operation order (OPORD), fragmentary order (FRAGO), or standing operating procedures (SOP).</p> <p>f. Maintains surveillance and provides security of the area until the arrival of the company.</p> <p>g. Posts guides with local security to guide company to its initial position.</p> <p>9. Company elements move to and clear the release point (RP).</p> <p>a. Move to and occupies assembly area (AA).</p> <p>b. Follow directions from guides and moves into marked positions.</p> <p>c. Orient weapon systems to cover sectors of responsibility.</p> <p>d. Follow proper cool-down procedures, shuts down engines simultaneously, if applicable.</p> <p>* 10. Company commander or designated representative initiates assembly area activities.</p> <p>a. Reviews organization of the assembly area (AA) with quartering party personnel.</p> <p>b. Assigns each platoon a sector of the perimeter to ensure mutual support and to cover all gaps by observation and fire.</p> <p>c. Designates section direct fire responsibilities.</p> <p>d. Directs platoon leaders to prepare sector sketches.</p> <p>e. Keeps higher headquarters informed of the status of the operation.</p> <p>(1) Reports company's arrival at the assembly area (AA).</p> <p>(2) Reports completion of initial occupation of assembly area</p>		
--	--	--

(AA) positions.

(3) Prepares and forwards situation reports (SITREPs) to higher headquarters, as necessary, throughout the operation.

f. Determines security procedures, readiness condition (REDCON) level, and priorities of work.

11. Company establishes and maintains local security under directions from the company commander.

- a. Establishes patrols to prevent infiltration and to clear possible enemy observation posts (OPs) within assigned sector (if applicable).
- b. Designates an observation post (OP) and selects observation post (OP) personnel.
- c. Ensures the observation personnel (OP) have communications with the company.

Note: Warns the company of any enemy approach before the company is attacked (OP).

- d. Camouflages equipment.
- e. Enforces noise, light, and litter discipline.
- f. Prepares primary fighting positions.

12. Company elements conduct the following. (Based on the priority of work established by the company commander.) (Can vary by company tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP) and mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC) factors.)

- a. Position weapon systems and assigns sectors of fire.
- b. Position other assets attached to the company.
- c. Establish wire communications.
- d. Designate final protective line (FPL) and final protective fires (FPFs).
- e. Clear fields of fire and prepare range cards and sector sketches.
- f. Camouflage the positions.
- g. Coordinate with adjacent elements left, right, forward, and to the rear, if applicable.
  - (1) Ensure there are no gaps between elements.
  - (2) Exchange information on observation post (OP) locations and company signals.
- h. Improve primary fighting positions by adding such things as overhead cover.
- i. Prepare alternate positions, then supplementary positions.
- j. Establish a sleep and rest plan.
- k. Reconnoiter routes.
- l. Adjust positions or control measures as required.
- m. Dig trenches to connect positions.
- n. Stockpile ammunition, food, and water.
- o. Continue to improve positions.

13. Platoons forward a sector sketch to the company commander and keep one for platoon use.

14. Company performs field sanitation operations.

- a. Maintains adequate supply of potable water.

- b. Establishes latrines and hand washing facilities.
- c. Performs personal hygiene activities.

15. Company assumes specified readiness condition (REDCON) level, taking one of the following steps:

- a. Assumes readiness condition (REDCON-1). (Be prepared to move immediately).

Note: A period of maximum preparedness, readiness condition readiness condition REDCON-1 ensures that all company personnel are alert and prepared for action immediately. Company elements, to include observation posts (Ops), are recalled, and weapons are manned.

- b. Assumes readiness condition (REDCON-2). (Be prepared to move in 15 minutes).

Note: Equipment is stowed except for wire and telephone equipment if used. Company weapons are manned. Company elements, observation posts (Ops), are still deployed.

- c. Assumes readiness condition (REDCON-3). (Be prepared to move in 1 hour).

Note: Fifty percent of each element may stand down for feeding, rest, maintenance, or troop-leading procedures.

- d. Assumes readiness condition (REDCON-4). (Be prepared to move in 2 hours).

Note: Seventy five percent of each element may stand down for feeding, rest, maintenance, or troop-leading procedures. Crew-served weapons within each infantry platoon are manned. Observation posts (Ops) are manned.

16. Company continues priority of work, including operations security (OPSEC), maintenance, resupply, and rest activities.

- a. Maintains security in accordance with (IAW) company commander's guidance, order and or tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP).
- b. Increases readiness condition (REDCON) levels progressively as required based on company commander's guidance or unit standing operating procedure (SOP).

\*17. Company commander or designated representative conducts preparations for departing the assembly area (AA) (on receiving order).

- a. Reconnoiters route and or calculates time distance for departing the assembly area (AA), as directed.
- b. Conducts police call to ensure no equipment, supplies, or other items of tactical or intelligence value is left behind.
- c. Increases readiness condition (REDCON) levels progressively as required based on higher headquarters' guidance or tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP).

TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK						
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

**Task Title**

- Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Company) (Dismounted)
- Conduct Tactical Movement (Infantry Company)
- Employ Obstacle(s) (Infantry Company)
- Take Action on Contact (Infantry Company)
- Conduct an Area or Zone Reconnaissance (Infantry Company)
- Operate in an Electronic Warfare Environment (Infantry Company)
- Report Tactical Information (Infantry Company)
- Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Infantry Company)
- Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Antiarmor/Infantry Company)
- Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)
- Establish Communications (Infantry Company)
- Operate a Command Post (Antiarmor/Infantry Company)
- Prepare for Combat (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aircraft (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Passive Air Defense Measures (Infantry Company)



moving.

f. Considers the enemy's capabilities, likely course of actions (COAs), and specific weapons capabilities.

g. Coordinates and synchronizes activities within each battlefield operating system (BOS).

\* 4. Company commander and reconnaissance element conducts the reconnaissance based on factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC).

a. Pinpoints the primary and alternate command post (CP) locations.

b. Establishes security.

c. Verifies and updates intelligence information.

d. Leaves a surveillance team to observe the location, if necessary.

e. Returns to the company position.

\* 5. Company commander or designated representative positions command post CP.

a. Moves on covered and concealed routes to the rear of company combat elements.

b. Completes all communications checks.

c. Positions the command post (CP) in a static position (assembly area, battle position, etc.).

(1) Positions the command post (CP) away from natural lines of drift and key terrain features.

(2) Collocates the company command post (CP) with a platoon command post (CP), if added security is required.

(3) Camouflages command post (CP) to prevent detection from ground and air.

d. Moves command post.

(1) Designates where the command post (CP) will move.

(2) Halts in concealed, terrain-masked positions with or to the rear of company overwatch or support by fire element.

(3) Maintains radio communications with higher headquarter's command post (CP) and subordinate elements throughout the operation.

(4) Conducts reconnaissance of terrain forward, to the rear, and to the flanks of the unit's position, as required.

6. Command post establishes security and conducts operations.

a. Establishes security before main element arrives.

b. Operates as the net control station (NCS) for the company command net.

c. Provides all-round protection for the command post (CP) main element at the site.

d. Monitors company and kandak radio nets and fire direction net as needed.

e. Manages the flow of information between the company and higher headquarters.

f. Positions observation posts (OPs) on likely avenues of approach and verify observation posts (OPs) are as far forward as possible while still being within small arms support range.

Note: The command post (CP) should maintain wire communications with observation posts (Ops), if possible.

- g. Maintains an operations log and operations map, continuously tracks operations.
  - (1) Updates and maintains the locations of subordinate and adjacent units.
- h. Provides commander and subordinate leaders with periodic updates of friendly/enemy units to the front, flanks, and rear, and information on civilian personnel and activities.
- i. Reports the unit location in a secure manner when required.
- j. Records and plots all spot reports and forwards them to higher headquarters.
- k. Processes information, prepares and submits all reports in accordance with (IAW) the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP) to higher headquarters.
- l. Forwards kandak orders and other critical information to company commander, if applicable.
- m. Distributes air attack warnings to all company elements.
- n. Maintains accurate status reports for all subordinate elements (i.e., combat power and maintenance status, classes of supply, pre-combat inspection [PCI] completion, etc.).
- o. Upgrades security measures to include booby traps, trip wires, listening devices, and patrols.
- p. Plans and coordinates combat service support (CSS) for the company, assisted by the company first sergeant.
- q. Conducts continuous operations.
  - (1) Cross-trains personnel.
  - (2) Establishes command post (CP) work schedule and sleep plan.
  - (3) Ensures key decision-makers get sleep.

7. Command post moves to alternate location(s) as directed by the company commander or dictated by factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC).

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

“\*\*” indicates a leader task step.

## **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

### **SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

#### **Task Title**

Employ Obstacle(s) (Infantry Company)  
Conduct an Area or Zone Reconnaissance (Infantry Company)  
Report Tactical Information (Infantry Company)  
Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Company)  
Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Company)  
Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)  
Establish Communications (Infantry Company)  
Maintain Operations Security (Infantry Company)



supporting units.

- (1) Coordinates fire plans.
- (2) Coordinates and or confirms scheme of maneuver.
- (3) Updates and or confirms current intelligence.
- (4) Coordinates control measures.
- (5) Coordinates communications and signals.
- (6) Coordinates time schedules.
- (7) Coordinates support requirements.

\* 5. Company commander or designated representative receives attachments.

a. Briefs attachments.

- (1) Mission and the commander's intent.
- (2) Attachments' tasks.
- (3) Tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP).
- (4) Overall plan.
- (5) Recent enemy activities.
- (6) Recent company activities.

b. Ensures subordinate element linkup.

\* 6. Company leaders supervise mission preparation.

a. Conducts confirmation briefs for key leaders.

b. Directs subordinate elements to prepare all field-expedient equipment needed for their tasks.

c. Coordinate and supervise resupply operations.

d. Supervises vehicle commanders and or subordinate leader's pre combat checks (PCCs).

- (1) Before-operations preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS) conducted for vehicles, weapon systems, communications, and ancillary equipment.
- (2) Preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS) deficiencies repaired and or reported to maintenance elements, as applicable.
- (3) Prepare-to-fire checks conducted for all weapon systems.
- (4) Weapon systems bore sighted.
- (5) Weapons test-fired, if possible.
- (6) Communications ( radio voice) frequencies set on each radio in accordance with (IAW), operation order (OPORD), or tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP).
- (7) Vehicles loaded in accordance with (IAW) the unit load plan and or tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP).
- (8) Vehicles, equipment, and personnel resupplied.
  - (a) Rations and water.
  - (b) Petroleum oil and lubricant (POL).
  - (c) Ammunition and pyrotechnics.
  - (d) Batteries for all equipment.
- (9) Vehicles camouflaged to match area of operations, time and material permitting.
- (10) Personnel in correct uniform.
- (11) Personnel brief back of mission, commander's intent, and their specific responsibilities.

<p>(12) Personnel brief back of rules of engagement (ROE), and or rules of interaction (ROI), and or rules of interaction (ROI), civil-military relationships and specific operational limitations.</p> <p>(13) Pre combat checks (PCCs) status reported to company commander.</p> <p>*7. Leaders conduct inspections.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assign areas of responsibility for the inspection.</li> <li>b. Determine timeline for inspection requirements.</li> <li>c. Designate representatives to inspect required areas and or items.       <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Ensure present, functional, clean, and or complete</li> <li>(2) Leaders inspect selected areas and or items.</li> </ol> </li> <li>d. Tests key leaders' knowledge of mission.       <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Inspects for correct map and overlays.</li> <li>(2) Brief backs rules of engagement (ROE), and or rules of interaction (ROI), civil-military relationships and specific operational limitations.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> <p>* 8. Company commander plans and supervises rehearsals.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Rehearses mission-specific tasks.</li> <li>b. Selects rehearsal type and technique.</li> <li>c. Includes air defense, fire support, and engineer requirements.</li> <li>d. Identifies problem areas, contingency actions, movement reaction times, and coordination requirements.</li> <li>e. Ensures battlefield operating system (BOS) synchronization.</li> <li>f. Plans security.</li> </ol> <p>* 9. Company commander modifies plan based on sustainment of combat operations.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determines ammunition, supply, and service requirements.</li> <li>b. Issues guidance on individual loads.       <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Combat load (fighting load, approach march load).</li> <li>(2) Sustainment load.</li> </ol> </li> <li>c. Determines transportation requirements, based on Executive officer (X0) and or First Sergeant (1SG) input.</li> <li>d. Directs supply techniques to support the tactical plan.</li> <li>e. Directs requisition and distribution of special equipment and supplies.</li> <li>f. Establishes and enforces company rest plan.</li> </ol> <p>10. Company continues reconnaissance during mission preparation.</p> <p>* 11. Company commander monitors actions of higher, adjacent, and supporting units.</p> <p>12. Company updates combat critical information to higher, adjacent, and supporting</p>		
--	--	--

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

**Task Title**

- Conduct an Area or Zone Reconnaissance (Infantry Company)
- Report Tactical Information (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Resupply Operations (Antiarmor/Infantry Company)
- Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Risk Management (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)
- Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)



- a. Makes enemy contact with the smallest element possible.
- b. Rapidly develops combat power upon enemy contact.
- c. Provides all-round security for the unit.
- d. Supports the higher commander's concept and intent.
- e. Avoids mounted movement on terrain restricting maneuver (such as draws, ravines, narrow trails, or steep slopes).

- \* 5. Company commander plans using troop-leading procedures.
  - a. Conducts a map reconnaissance.
    - (1) Identifies tentative rally points, if required.
    - (2) Identifies likely enemy avenues of approach.
    - (3) Marks tentative dismount points on maps, if applicable.
  - b. Coordinates indirect fire support and or close air support, if available.
  - c. Identifies and assigns direct fire responsibilities.
  - d. Plans the integration of direct and indirect fires in accordance with (IAW) higher headquarters' fire support plan.
  - e. Selects the proper technique to be used for conducting the movement to contact, if not directed by higher headquarters.
    - (1) Search-and-attack technique.
    - (2) Approach-march technique.
  - f. Organizes the company as necessary to accomplish the mission and or compensate for combat losses.
  - g. Designates the main effort. (Usually the platoon most likely to make contact).
  - h. Plans continuous operations, if required.
  - i. Plans and coordinates combat service support (CSS).
  - j. Determines the requirement for patrol bases.
  - k. Determines linkup requirements.
  - l. Determines movement technique based on factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC).
  - m. Determines how key weapons will be employed.
  - n. Confirms fire control measures and engagement criteria.
  - o. Addresses actions on chance contact with the enemy.
  - p. Considers the enemy's capabilities, likely courses of actions (COAs), and specific weapons capabilities to understand the threat and ensure the security of his company.
  - q. Coordinates with adjacent units using radio, or other tactical means, as required.
  - r. Coordinates passage of lines using radio or other tactical means, if required.
  - s. Decides how the company will enter its zone or area of operations (moving as a company then splitting up, by infiltrating platoons and sections, or by air assault), how to move once in the area, where to locate certain units or facilities, and what the requirements for contingency plans are.
  - t. Conducts reconnaissance as required.

Note: There may not be enough time to reconnoiter extensively to locate the enemy.

- (1) Confirms the most likely enemy location.
- (2) Adjust the plan based on updated intelligence and

reconnaissance effort.  
(3) Updates the enemy situation.  
(4) Disseminates updated reports overlays, and other pertinent information.

\* 6. Company commander issues orders and instructions to include rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).

a. Issues clear and concise taskings to platoons and or elements.

7. Company conducts a rehearsal.

\* 8. Company commander issues fragmentary orders (FRAGOs), as necessary, to address changes to the plan identified during the rehearsal.

\* 9 Company commander coordinates and or synchronizes actions of the subordinate elements.

\* 10. Company commander uses fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) as necessary to redirect actions of subordinate elements.

11. Company executes search-and-attack technique when search and attack (SA) does not provide adequate information on enemy location, disposition, and strength.

a. Develops a detailed analysis based on factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC).

(1) Determines the number and size of the areas in which the company will be operating.

(a) Assigns small areas of operation that keep the platoons concentrated and help maintain control.

b. Focuses platoons on likely enemy locations.

c. Uses multiple, coordinated, small-unit (squad, section, or platoon) actions to find, fix, and finish the enemy.

d. Finds the enemy.

(1) Conducts reconnaissance as necessary.

e. Makes contact without being detected and fixes and finishes the enemy.

(1) Gains the initiative and completes one of the following three options.

(a) Destroys the enemy with the immediately available combat potential.

(b) Maneuvers the remainder of the unit to destroy the enemy.

(c) Follows the enemy back to his base camp and destroy him there.

f. Ensures platoons know what actions to take when they locate the enemy either with or without being detected.

g. Reports the situation using other tactical means, as required.

h. Ensures security is maintained.

i. Ensures mutual support is provided within the company.

12. Company uses approach-march technique, based on the enemy

situation.

a. Designated as the advance guard.

- (1) Finds the enemy and locates gaps, flanks, and weaknesses in the enemy's ranks.
- (2) Attempts to make contact on the ground of its choosing.
- (3) Operates within the range of the main body's (friendly) indirect fire support weapons.
- (4) Leads the advance guard with one platoon.
  - (a) Rotates platoons as necessary.
- (5) Uses appropriate formations and movement techniques based on factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC).
- (6) Protects the higher unit from a surprise attack by providing early warning of enemy positions and obstacles.
- (7) Assists the forward movement of the higher unit by removing obstacles or finding routes around them.
- (8) Develops the situation, rapidly, once contact is made.
- (9) Destroys enemy forces (within its capability).
- (10) Reports the situation using radio or other tactical means, as required.

b. Designated as the flank or rear guard.

- (1) Moves using the appropriate formation and movement technique, based on factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC).

Note: The company must maintain the same momentum as the main body.

- (2) Provides early warning to the main body.
- (3) Makes contact with the enemy.
- (4) Maintains contact until ordered to do otherwise by the higher commander.
- (5) Destroys enemy reconnaissance elements, within its capability.
- (6) Prevents direct fires or observation of the main body.
- (7) Reports the situation using radio or other tactical means, as required.
- (8) Company element makes unexpected contact. (Enemy HAS NOT detected company elements.)
  - (a) Reports and deploys to prevent detection.
  - (b) Prepares for a hasty attack.
  - (c) Calls for indirect fires.
  - (d) Immediately fires at the enemy position. (Element in overwatch).
  - (e) Takes cover and waits for orders. (Trail element, if not able to fire).
  - (f) Attempts to fight through, destroying the enemy with the resources that are immediately available.
  - (g) Reports to the company commander and develops the situation.
- (9) Company element makes unexpected contact. (Enemy has detected company elements.)
  - (a) Element in contact returns fire immediately and seeks cover.

- (b) Use aggressive small-unit actions to seize the initiative rapidly and at the lowest echelon possible.
- (c) Attempts to achieve fire superiority to fix or suppress the enemy with the resources that are immediately available.
- (d) Develops the situation to identify the enemy's flanks, any covered and concealed routes around the enemy position, possible supporting positions (both friendly and enemy), and any protective obstacles that the enemy has constructed.
- (e) Reports information to company commander.
- (f) Determines the course of action (conduct a hasty attack, bypass, establish a hasty defense, or disengage). (Company commander).

c. Moves as part of the main body.

Note: When moving as part of the main body, the company may be tasked to assault, bypass, or fix an enemy force; to seize, secure, or clear an assigned area; to conduct stay behind ambushes; or perform security missions.

- (1) Uses appropriate formations and movement techniques, as required and or directed.
- (2) Prepares to fire or maneuver in support of the lead company.
- (3) Prepares to assume the lead company's mission, if required.
- (4) Reports the situation using radio or other tactical means, as required.

\* 13. Commander synchronizes platoon actions.

14. Company consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.

15. Company secures enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) as required.

16. Company treats and evacuates casualties.

17. Company processes captured documents and or equipment as required.

18. Company continues operations as directed.

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

### **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

#### **Task Title**

- LOCATE A TARGET BY SHIFT FROM A KNOWN POINT
- Perform a Function Check on a Markarov Pistol
- Load a Markarov Pistol
- Engage Targets with an AK-47 Series Rifle
- Engage Targets with an RPK Machine Gun
- Engage Targets with an RPK Machine Gun
- Load a PKM Machine Gun
- Load the PKM Coaxial Machine Gun
- Restore an AGS-17 Medium Antitank Weapon to Carrying Configuration
- Engage Targets with an AGS-17 Medium Antitank Weapon
- Engage Targets with an AK Carbine
- Perform a Function Check on a GP-30 Grenade Launcher
- Load a GP-30 Grenade Launcher
- Engage Targets with a GP-30 Grenade Launcher
- Unload an RPK Machine Gun
- Engage Targets with the PKM Coaxial Machine Gun
- Engage Targets with a PKM Machine Gun
- Engage Targets with an AK-47
- Engage Targets with a GP-30 Grenade Launcher
- Prepare an AGS-17 Medium Antitank Weapon for Firing
- Perform Misfire Procedures on an AGS-17 Medium Antitank Weapon
- Move as a Member of a Fire Team
- Move under Direct Fire
- Move Over, Through, or Around Obstacles (Except Minefields)
- React to Flares
- Estimate Range
- Select a Movement Route Using a Map
- React to Indirect Fire While Mounted
- Control Movement of a Fire Team
- Select an Overwatch Position
- Conduct the Maneuver of a Squad
- Conduct Movement Techniques by a Platoon

## **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS Cont'd**

### **Task Title**

Determine the Grid Coordinates of a Point on a Military Map  
Determine a Magnetic Azimuth Using a Lensatic Compass  
Determine a Location on the Ground by Terrain Association  
Navigate from One Point on the Ground to another Point While Dismounted  
Measure Distance on a Map  
Orient a Map Using a Lensatic Compass  
Orient a Map to the Ground by Map-Terrain Association  
Locate an Unknown Point on a Map and on the Ground by Intersection  
Navigate from One Point on the Ground to another Point While Mounted  
Analyze Terrain  
Extract Information from a Route Reconnaissance Report  
Perform Self-Extraction from a Minefield  
React to Direct Fire While Mounted  
Conduct a Leader's Reconnaissance  
Control Organic Fires  
Plan for Use of Supporting Fires  
Conduct the Maneuver of a Platoon  
Determine Azimuths Using a Protractor

## **SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

### **Task Title**

Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)  
Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (Infantry Company)  
Conduct Tactical Movement (Infantry Company)  
Secure Routes (Infantry Company)  
Take Action on Contact (Infantry Company)  
Conduct a Reconnaissance (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)  
Conduct a Route Reconnaissance (Infantry Company)  
Report Tactical Information (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)  
Report Tactical Information (Infantry Company)  
Employ Fire Support (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)  
Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Infantry Company)  
Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)  
Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry Company)  
Conduct a Rehearsal (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)  
Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Company)  
Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)  
Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Infantry Company)  
Conduct Risk Management (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)  
Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Company)  
Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)  
Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)  
Occupy an Assembly Area (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)  
Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Company)  
Prepare for Combat (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)  
Prepare for Combat (Infantry Company)  
Maintain Operations Security (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)  
Maintain Operations Security (Infantry Company)



- b. Loads equipment in accordance with (IAW) commander's guidance and or tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP).
- c. Positions vehicles for departure on notice.
- d. Maintains local security while awaiting orders to move.

\* 5. Company commander or designated representative direct platoons to destroy non-essential non-medical supplies, equipment, and documents that cannot be move with the company.

- a. Destroy documents in accordance with (IAW), tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP).
- b. Destroy supplies in accordance with (IAW) appropriate technical manual (TM) and or tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP).
- c. Render equipment inoperative in accordance with (IAW) appropriate technical manual (TM) and or tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP).

6. Company conducts withdrawal.

- a. Conducts orderly departure from area without excessive noises.
- b. Moves elements to new assembly area via prescribed route.
- c. Secures enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.
- d. Evacuates casualties.

7. Rear security party provides security for company displacement.

- a. Occupies fighting positions.
- b. Engages threat, when sighted, with all available weapons, if necessary.
- c. Withdraws to alternate or supplementary positions or company AA (mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations [METT-TC] factors dependent).
  - (1) Secures enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.
  - (2) Treats and evacuates casualties.

8. Company consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.

9. Company secures enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.

10. Company treats and evacuates casualties.

11. Company processes captured documents and or equipment as required.

12. Company continues operations as directed.

TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK						
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

**Task Title**

- Conduct a Withdrawal (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)
- Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Tactical Movement (Infantry Company)
- Report Tactical Information (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)
- Report Tactical Information (Infantry Company)
- Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)
- Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)
- Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)
- Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)
- Maintain Operations Security (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)
- Maintain Operations Security (Infantry Company)
- Occupy a Firing Position (Antiarmor Platoon)



3. Company updates reports as the situation changes.		
--	--	--

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

### **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

**Task Title**

- React to Flares
- Establish an Observation Post
- Coordinate with an Adjacent Platoon
- Identify Topographic Symbols on a Military Map
- Determine a Magnetic Azimuth Using a Lensatic Compass
- Orient a Map to the Ground by Map-Terrain Association
- Challenge Persons Entering Your Area
- Perform Surveillance without the Aid of Electronic Devices
- Analyze Terrain

### **SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

**Task Title**

- Establish Communications (Infantry Company)
- Maintain Operations Security (Infantry Company)



(5) Marks tentative dismount and or remount points on maps as appropriate.

c. Plans, integrates, and coordinates direct fire support, indirect fire support, and or close air support (CAS) to achieve one or more of the following operational goals.

(1) Plans to suppress enemy antitank or other weapon systems that inhibit movement.

(2) Plans to fix or neutralize bypassed enemy elements.

(3) Plans to prepare enemy positions for an assault. (Preparatory fires are normally used during a deliberate attack, with fires placed on key targets before the assault begins. Fires are initiated on call or at a prearranged time. The commander must weigh the benefits of preparatory fires against the potential loss of surprise.)

(4) Plans to obscure enemy observation or screen friendly maneuver. (The company can take advantage of smoke in various maneuver situations, such as during a bypass or in deception operations.)

(5) Plans to support breaching operations. (Fires can be used to obscure or suppress enemy elements that are overwatching reinforcing obstacles. They can also obscure or suppress enemy forces on an objective area during the conduct of an assault breach.)

(6) Plans to illuminate enemy positions. (Illumination fires are always included in contingency plans for night attacks.)

(7) Plans the employment of weapons systems (tanks, antiarmor, etc.) IAW doctrine.

d. Plans fire support for each phase of the operation.

e. Plans and coordinates combat service support (CSS) to assist maneuver elements in maintaining the momentum of the attack.

(1) Plans for the increased consumption of Class III and Class V supplies.

(2) Plans for casualty evacuation.

(3) Plans for increased equipment maintenance requirements.

(4) Plans to position combat service support (CSS) assets as far forward as possible.

f. Develops control measures for movement and fire support.

g. Addresses actions on chance contact with the enemy.

h. Task-organizes the company into a support, assault, and breach element as required

i. Develops and issues a reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) plan.

4. Company begins necessary movement.

\*5. Company commander conducts a leader's reconnaissance.

a. Pinpoints the objective.

b. Establishes security at the objective.

c. Selects security, support, and assault positions.

d. Determines the enemy's size, location, disposition, and most probable course of action on the objective.

e. Determines where the enemy is most vulnerable to attack and

- where the support element can best place fires on the objective.
- f. Determines whether to conduct the assault mounted or dismounted, if applicable.
- g. Verifies and updates intelligence information.
- h. Leaves a surveillance team to observe the objective.
- i. Returns to the company position.

\* 6. Company commander adjust the plan based on updated intelligence and reconnaissance effort.

\* 7. Company commander overlays, disseminates updated and other pertinent information.

8. Company prepares for attack.

- a. Issues orders and instructions to include rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).
- b. Conducts a rehearsal.
- c. Completes final inspections.

9. Company issues fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) as necessary to address changes to the plan identified during the rehearsal.

10. Company executes the attack.

- a. Moves to the line of departure (LD) using a technique and formation based on the factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC). (May be done under the supervision of the company executive officer or first sergeant while the company commander is forward conducting a leader's reconnaissance.)
- b. Navigates from checkpoint to checkpoint or phase line by using basic land navigation skills supplemented by precision navigation.
- c. Moves from the line of departure (LD) to support positions, assault positions, or breach or bypass sites.

Note: If undetected, company may halt in the assault position to complete final preparations for the assault. If detected, company does not halt in the assault position unless it is absolutely necessary to ensure synchronization of all friendly forces.

- (1) Moves using the designated and or appropriate technique.
- (2) Uses cover and concealment.
- (3) Communicates primarily by radio and signals during movement.
- (4) Uses smoke and supporting fire if detected.

d. Conducts the assault MOUNTED.

Note: A mounted assault is only conducted against light resistance or when there are no heavy antiarmor weapons on the objective.

- (1) Does not stop after moving forward of the assault position.
- (2) Controls supporting fires to prevent fratricide.
- (3) Shifts or lifts fires or displaces weapons systems to positions where continuous fire can be maintained.
- (4) Isolates the objective.
  - (a) Prevents the enemy from reinforcing the objective and prevents enemy forces on the objective from leaving.

- (b) Places suppressive fires on the most dangerous enemy positions.
- (c) Shift fires of self defense weapons to allow the breach element to penetrate the objective.
- (d) Maintains visual observation of suppressive fires just forward of the breach and assault elements.
- (e) Positions or repositions weapons systems to provide continual suppressive fire to aid the actions of the assault element as it moves across the objective.
- (f) Uses radio or visual signals to communicate with the breach and assault element or both.

(5) Conducts initial breach of obstacles if required.

(6) Assaults the objective.

(a) Leads with tanks, if available, and uses fighting vehicles to provide supporting fires while moving.

(b) Moves onto the objective by conducting fire and movement.

(c) Dismounts if the enemy begins to place effective antiarmor fires on assaulting element. (Vehicles move to support positions.)

(d) Uses indirect fires to isolate portions of the objective area to obscure enemy element and or to screen the movement of the assault element.

(e) Ensures bypassed enemy cannot place effective fires on tanks and or fighting vehicles.

(f) Destroys enemy forces, captures enemy forces, and or forces their withdrawal from the objective area in accordance with the commander's intent.

e. Conducts the assault DISMOUNTED. (Can be a light infantry company or mechanized infantry company using dismounted elements to assault).

(1) Does not stop after moving forward of the assault position.

(2) Controls supporting fires to prevent fratricide.

(3) Shifts or lifts fires or displaces weapons systems to positions where continuous fire can be maintained.

f. Isolates the objective.

(1) Prevents the enemy from reinforcing the objective and prevents enemy forces on the objective from leaving.

(2) Places suppressive fires on the most dangerous enemy positions.

(3) Shift fires of self defense weapons to allow the breach element to penetrate the objective.

(4) Maintains visual observation of suppressive fires just forward of the breach and assault elements.

(5) Positions or repositions weapons systems to provide continual suppressive fire to aid the actions of the assault element as it moves across the objective.

(6) Uses radio or visual signals to communicate with the breach and assault element or both.

g. Conducts initial breach of obstacles if required.

h. Assaults the objective.

<p>(1) Uses fighting vehicles to provide supporting fires if available.</p> <p>(2) Moves onto the objective by conducting fire and movement.</p> <p>(3) Uses indirect fires to isolate portions of the objective area to obscure enemy element and or to screen the movement of the assault element.</p> <p>(4) Ensures bypassed enemy cannot place effective fires on company elements.</p> <p>(5) Destroys enemy forces, captures enemy forces, and or forces their withdrawal from the objective area in accordance with the commander's intent.</p> <p>i. Occupies designated defensible positions as necessary.</p> <p>(1) Assaults through the objective to occupy defensible terrain beyond the objective, if the objective is not defensible.</p> <p>(2) Prepares for a counterattack.</p> <p>11. Company secures enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.</p> <p>12. Company conducts consolidation and reorganization.</p> <p>a. Maintains all around security to prevent and or defend an enemy counterattack.</p> <p>b. Reestablishes the chain of command.</p> <p>c. Re-mans key weapons.</p> <p>d. Redistributes ammunition and equipment.</p> <p>e. Clears the objective of casualties and enemy prisoners of war (EPW).</p> <p>* 13. Company commander assesses and reports the situation to higher headquarters.</p> <p>a. Compiles subordinate element leader situation reports (SITREPs).</p> <p>b. Assesses and reports the status of personnel, ammunition, supplies, and essential equipment.</p> <p>14. Company treats and evacuates casualties.</p> <p>15. Company processes captured documents and or equipment as required.</p> <p>16. Company continues operations as directed.</p>		
---	--	--

TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK						
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

### SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

#### Task Title

- Breach an Obstacle (Infantry Company)
- Conduct an Area or Zone Reconnaissance (Infantry Company)
- Report Tactical Information (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Overwatch and or Support by Fire (Infantry Company)
- Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Infantry Company)
- Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry Company)
- Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Infantry Company)
- Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)
- Prepare for Combat (Infantry Company)
- Maintain Operations Security (Infantry Company)



e. Address actions on chance contact with the enemy.

\* 4. Commander disseminates overlays, and other pertinent information to subordinate elements to keep them abreast of the situation.

\* 5. Commander or designated representative conducts reconnaissance.

- a. Determines nature of enemy or obstacle contact, including size, location, composition, and other factors.
- b. Identifies bypass route that affords adequate cover and concealment and or intervening distance, preventing the enemy from effectively obstructing and or firing on the company and or platoon.
- c. Plan additional security measures, such as employment of screening or obscuring smoke.
- d. Ensures bypass affords routes away from enemy positions, obstacles, and kill sacks.
- e. Ensures that terrain along the bypass will support the maneuver of the company and follow-on force.

Note: If the company and or platoon does not locate a suitable bypass, the company commander and or platoon leader send a situation report (SITREP) to the higher headquarters commander and prepare the company and or platoon to take action as directed.

- f. Adjust the plan based on updated intelligence and reconnaissance effort.
- g. Disseminate updated overlays, and other pertinent information.

\* 6. Company commander issues orders and instructions to include rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).

- a. Issues clear and concise taskings to platoons and or elements.

\* 7. Company commander coordinates and or synchronizes actions of the fixing force and other company elements.

\* 8. Company commander uses fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) as necessary to redirect actions of subordinate elements.

9. Company conducts tactical movement or maneuver along the route or axis.

- a. Uses appropriate movement technique and formation.
- b. Maintains proper weapons orientation to ensure 360-degree security.
- c. Identifies and reacts to enemy forces along the route.
  - (1) Executes appropriate drill(s).
  - (2) Completes the following as necessary:
    - (a) Infantry remain mounted.
    - (b) Calls for and adjust indirect fire and smoke to screen movement past the enemy position.
    - (c) Reports the size and the location of the enemy to the higher headquarters commander, and the company and or platoon continue the mission.
    - (d) Avoids detection and or delay, if possible.
    - (e) Avoids decisive engagement.

<p style="text-align: center;">f. Marks bypass as required.</p> <p>Note: Fixing element normally hands the enemy over to a supporting force (if applicable), breaks contact, and rejoins the company and or platoon.</p> <p>* 10. Company commander initiates the following when they can not bypass an enemy force.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">a. Establishes a base of fire to suppress the enemy and prevent him from repositioning any part of his force for use elsewhere.</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">(1) Vehicles seek covered positions and the infantry platoons dismount.</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">(2) Suppress the enemy using direct fire.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">b. Calls for and adjust indirect fires to suppress the enemy.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">c. Employs or calls for obscuring or screening smoke to facilitate the maneuver of the rest of the company.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">d. Directs maneuvers, as necessary, to prevent becoming decisively engaged in accordance with (IAW) the operation order (OPORD).</p> <p>11. Company takes appropriate action(s), after completion of the bypass.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">a. Consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">b. Reports completion and location of the bypass route to the higher headquarters commander and adjacent units.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">c. Secures enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">d. Treats and evacuate casualties.</p> <p>12. Company continues operations as directed.</p> <p>13. Company processes captured documents and or equipment as required.</p>		
--	--	--

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	1	2	3	4	5	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

“\*” Indicates a leader task step

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

**Task**

- Locate Mines by Visual Means
- Select an Overwatch Position
- Conduct the Maneuver of a Platoon
- Control Use of Night Vision Devices

## **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS Cont'd**

### **Task**

Plan Use of Night Vision Devices

Operate Night Vision Goggles

## **SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

### **Task Title**

Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Company) (Dismounted)

Conduct Tactical Movement (Infantry Company)

React to Snipers (Infantry Company)

Take Action on Contact (Infantry Company)

Breach an Obstacle (Infantry Company)

Report Tactical Information (Infantry Company)

Employ Snipers (Infantry Company, Brigade Combat Team)

Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Infantry Company)

Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry Company)

Treat and Evacuate Casualties(Antiarmor/Infantry Company)

Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization(Infantry Company)

Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Company)

Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)

Maintain Operations Security (Infantry Company)



<p>(1) Considers the enemy's capabilities, likely courses of action (COAs), and specific weapons capabilities.</p> <p>b. Conducts a map reconnaissance.</p> <p>(1) Identifies initial and subsequent delay positions.</p> <p>(2) Identifies general routes between delay positions.</p> <p>(3) Identifies tentative, security, support by fire, and assault positions, if required.</p> <p>(4) Identifies likely enemy avenues of approach.</p> <p>(5) Identifies evacuation routes.</p> <p>(6) Marks tentative dismount points on maps as appropriate.</p> <p>c. Obtains graphics and overlays for the mission.</p> <p>d. Plans and coordinates indirect fire support and or close air support, if available.</p> <p>(1) Incorporates the higher headquarters fire plan in his plan.</p> <p>e. Identifies direct fire responsibilities.</p> <p>f. Develops control measures.</p> <p>(1) Includes company-level phase lines and graphics.</p> <p>g. Establishes the disengagement criteria.</p> <p>h. Plans obstacles to slow the enemy advance.</p> <p>i. Plans for possible offensive operations.</p> <p>j. Coordinates and synchronizes activities within each battlefield operating system (BOS).</p> <p>k. Organizes the company as necessary to accomplish the mission and or compensate for combat losses.</p> <p>l. Addresses actions on chance contact with the enemy.</p> <p>*5. Company commander disseminates overlays, and other pertinent information to each platoon to keep them abreast of the situation.</p> <p>*6. Company commander issues orders and instructions to include rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).</p> <p>a. Issues clear and concise taskings to platoons and or elements.</p> <p>7. Company conducts a rehearsal.</p> <p>*8. Company commander issues a fragmentary order (FRAGO), as necessary, to address changes to the plan identified during the rehearsal.</p> <p>9. Company prepares for the delay.</p> <p>a. Conducts a reconnaissance and marks general routes between delay positions.</p> <p>(1) Selects security, support, and assault positions, if required.</p> <p>(2) Leaves security at initial delay positions.</p> <p>(3) Verifies and updates intelligence information.</p> <p>b. Prepares and marks routes and subsequent positions.</p> <p>c. Constructs a series of alternate fighting positions.</p> <p>d. Prestocks supplies, fuel, and ammunition in designated positions as required.</p> <p>e. Constructs obstacles as needed.</p> <p>f. Evacuates all unneeded personnel, supplies, and equipment.</p> <p>g. Destroys unneeded supplies and equipment that cannot be</p>		
---	--	--

evacuated.

\*10. Company commander coordinates and or synchronizes actions of subordinate elements.

\* 11. Company commander uses fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) as necessary to redirect actions of subordinate elements.

12. Company conducts the delay.

a. Occupies initial delay positions in accordance with (IAW) the operation order (OPORD) and or guidance from higher headquarters.

b. Forces the enemy too slow his advance by forcing him to repeatedly deploy for the attack.

c. Employs one or more of the following.

(1) Ambushes.

(2) Snipers.

(3) Obstacles.

(4) Minefields (to include phony minefields).

(5) Direct and indirect fires.

d. Complies with all control measures and time constraints specified in the operation order (OPORD).

e. Implements the fire support plan.

Note: The company commander may direct platoons to attack or assault as apart of a company counterattack, based on kandak orders, the kandak commander's intent, and the current situation.

13. Company does not become decisively engaged.

a. Disengages from the enemy and withdraws to new positions prior to enemy assault.

b. Continues delaying action until reaching its final battle position or the mission is altered by higher headquarters.

14. Reports to higher headquarters using radio or other tactical means as required.

15. Company consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.

16. Company secures enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.

17. Company processes captured documents and or equipment as required.

18. Company continues operations as directed.

TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK						
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

#### Task Title

Locate Mines by Visual Means  
 Prime Explosives Nonelectrically  
 LOCATE A TARGET BY SHIFT FROM A KNOWN POINT  
 Load a PKM Machine Gun  
 Prepare a Range Card for a PKM Machine Gun  
 Construct a Fighting Position for an AGS-17 Medium Antitank Weapon  
 Restore an AGS-17 Weapon to Carrying Configuration  
 Perform a Function Check on an AK-47 Rifle Assault  
 Load an AK-47 Rifle Assault  
 Perform a Function Check on a GP-30 Grenade Launcher  
 Load a GP-30 Grenade Launcher  
 Load an RPK Machine Gun  
 Prepare a Range Card for a RPK Machine Gun  
 Prepare an Antiarmor Range  
 Prepare an AGS-17 Medium Antitank Weapon for Firing  
 Perform Misfire Procedures on an AGS-17 Medium Antitank Weapon  
 Select a Fighting Position for an AGS-17 Medium Antitank Weapon  
 Move as a Member of a Fire Team  
 React to Flares  
 Estimate Range  
 Prepare Positions for Individual and Crew-Served Weapons during MOUT  
 Issue an Oral Operation Order  
 Control Movement of a Fire Team  
 Select an Overwatch Position  
 Prepare a Platoon Sector Sketch  
 Coordinate with an Adjacent Platoon  
 Perform Surveillance without the Aid of Electronic Devices  
 Conduct a Leader's Reconnaissance  
 Control Organic Fires  
 Plan for Use of Supporting Fires  
 Conduct the Maneuver of a Platoon  
 Plan Use of Night Vision Devices  
 Operate Telephone Set

## **SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

### **Task Title**

Conduct Patrol Operations (Infantry Company)  
Conduct Tactical Movement (Infantry Company)  
Employ Obstacle(s) (Infantry Company)  
Conduct an Area or Zone Reconnaissance (Infantry Company)  
Report Tactical Information (Infantry Company)  
Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Infantry Company)  
Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Infantry Company)  
Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry Company)  
Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Infantry Company)  
Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Company)  
Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Infantry Company)  
Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Company)  
Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)  
Prepare for Combat (Infantry Company)  
Maintain Operations Security (Infantry Company)



<p>requirements with protected force.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determines the general trace of the guard and the time the operation will begin.</li> <li>b. Determines the area of responsibility for the guard.</li> <li>c. Determines current and subsequent locations of the protected force.</li> <li>d. Determines the distance between the guard force and the protected force.</li> <li>e. Identifies reinforcements needed to accomplish the guard mission, to include ground maneuver, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) assets.</li> <li>f. Determines special requirements or constraints.</li> <li>g. Coordinates necessary passage(s) of lines.</li> <li>h. Coordinates battle handover between the guard force and the protected force.</li> </ol> <p>* 4. Company commander plans using troop-leading procedures.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducts analysis based on factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC).       <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Considers the enemy's capabilities, likely courses of action (COAs), and specific weapons capabilities.</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Conducts a map reconnaissance.       <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Marks general trace, orientation, lateral and rear boundaries, and named areas of interest (NAI).</li> <li>(2) Marks current and subsequent locations of the protected force.</li> <li>(3) Identifies tentative defensive positions and or observation posts (OPs) positions.</li> <li>(4) Identifies route(s) to and from defensive positions and or observation posts (Ops).</li> <li>(5) Identifies target reference points (TRPs).</li> <li>(6) Identifies likely enemy avenues of approach.</li> <li>(7) Marks tentative dismount points, if required.</li> </ol> </li> <li>c. Confirms priorities.</li> <li>d. Prioritizes assigned tasks, as necessary.</li> <li>e. Plans and coordinates indirect fire support and or close air support, if available.</li> <li>f. Identifies direct fire responsibilities.</li> <li>g. Plans the integration of direct and indirect fires in accordance with (IAW) higher headquarters' fire support plan.</li> <li>h. Establishes fire control measures in accordance with (IAW) operation order (OPORD) and or fragmentary order (FRAGO).</li> <li>i. Identifies engagement criteria.</li> <li>j. Identifies displacement disengagement criteria.</li> <li>k. Coordinates with attached and or supporting maneuver, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) assets and incorporates them into the guard mission as required.</li> <li>l. Task organizes company's organic and nonorganic elements to best accomplish higher commander's intent.       <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Designates a surveillance element.</li> <li>(2) Designates an attack element.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		
---	--	--

- m. Designates mounted and or dismounted observation post (OP) positions to cover named area of interests (NAIs) and avenues of approach, as necessary.
- n. Plans use of sensor surveillance assets to augment mounted and or dismounted observation posts (Ops), as necessary.
- o. Develops reconnaissance plan in accordance with (IAW), operation order (OPORD) and or fragmentary order (FRAGO), rules of engagement (ROE), and or higher and or protected commander's guidance.
- p. Coordinates and synchronizes activities within each battlefield operating system (BOS).
- q. Develops movement plan.
- r. Plans and coordinates combat service support (CSS).
- s. Addresses actions on chance contact with the enemy.

\* 5. Company commander disseminates reports, overlays, and other pertinent information to each subordinate element to keep them abreast of the situation

\* 6. Company commander issues orders and instructions to include rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).

- a. Issues clear and concise taskings to platoons and or elements.

7. Company conducts a rehearsal.

\* 8. Company commander or designated representative and reconnaissance element conducts the reconnaissance based on factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC).

- a. Conducts a passage of lines, if required.
- b. Pinpoints company position(s).
- c. Establishes security, if required.
- d. Verifies and updates intelligence information.
- e. Leaves a surveillance team to observe positions, if required.
- f. Returns to company position.

9. Company elements move to and occupy initial guard positions.

- a. Establish local security.
- b. Prepare fighting positions as the situation allows and as required.
- c. Employ mounted and or dismounted observation posts (Ops) to ensure effective surveillance of designated named area of interests (NAIs).
- d. Establish a guard line, consisting of mounted and dismounted observation posts (Ops), that provides the protected force with adequate early warning.
- e. Establish mounted and or dismounted patrols to cover gaps or critical areas not observed by observation posts (Ops).
- f. Deploy other maneuver elements as necessary.
  - (1) Deploy elements to hide positions, attack by fire positions, and or battle positions (BPs) to destroy enemy reconnaissance elements.
  - (2) Deploy elements to defensive or delay positions to prepare

for actions against enemy security and main body elements.

- \* 10. Company commander controls the guard mission.
  - a. Coordinates and or synchronizes actions of subordinate elements.
  - b. Positions himself where he can best control subordinate elements.
  - c. Directs elements to move, on order, to successive screen and or phase lines.
  - d. Directs elements to move in accordance with (IAW), operation order (OPORD) or tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP).
  - e. Uses fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) and graphical control measures to direct subordinate element moves.
  - f. Ensures elements report when they occupy a new screen line or observation posts (Ops), cross phase lines, or reach march objectives.
  
- 11. Company executes the guard mission. (If a unit does not have the time or resources to complete any of the following tasks, it must inform the commander assigning the mission of the shortfall and request guidance on which tasks to complete or the priority of tasks.)
  - a. Destroys the enemy advance guard.
  - b. Maintains contact with enemy forces and reports activity in the area of operations (AO).
  - c. Maintains continuous surveillance of assigned avenues of approach in the area of operations (AO) under all visibility conditions.
  - d. Impedes and harasses the enemy using available systems and support.
  - e. Causes the enemy main body to deploy, and then reports its direction of movement.
  - f. Allows no enemy ground element to pass through the security area undetected and unreported.
  - g. Destroys or causes the withdrawal of all enemy reconnaissance patrols.
  - h. Maintains contact with the main body and any other security forces operating on its flanks.
  - i. Uses all available means at its disposal, including decisive engagement, to prevent the enemy from penetrating to a position where it could observe and engage the main body.
  - j. Operates within the range of the main body's fire support weapons.
  - k. Complies with the rules of engagement ROE and or rules of interaction (ROI).
  
- 12. Company completes guard mission.
  - a. Conducts battle handover with protected force and or follow-on guard force.
  - b. Consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.
  - c. Secures enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.
  - d. Treats and evacuates casualties.
  - e. Withdraws or displaces as directed or in accordance with (IAW) protected force or higher headquarters commander's intent.
  - f. Reports completion to higher headquarters commander.

13. Company processes captured documents and or equipment as required.		
14. Company continues operations as directed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK						
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

**Task Title**

- Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (Infantry Company)
- Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Company)
- Conduct an Ambush (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Tactical Movement (Infantry Company)
- Employ Obstacle(s) (Infantry Company)
- Take Action on Contact (Infantry Company)
- Breach an Obstacle (Infantry Company)
- Conduct an Area or Zone Reconnaissance (Infantry Company)
- Report Tactical Information (Infantry Company)
- Integrate Direct Fires (Infantry Company)
- Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Infantry Company)
- Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Infantry Company)
- Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry Company)
- Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Infantry Company)
- Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Company)
- Prepare for Combat (Infantry Company)
- Maintain Operations Security (Infantry Company)



- (COAs), and specific weapons capabilities.
- b. Conducts a map reconnaissance.
  - (1) Identifies primary and alternate linkup sites.
  - (2) Identifies rally points.
  - (3) Identifies likely enemy avenues of approach.
  - (4) Identifies routes to and from linkup site and rally point.
  - (5) Marks tentative dismount points on maps as appropriate.
- c. Develops a scheme of maneuver and control measures (contact points, checkpoints, phase lines, routes, and zones of actions).
- d. Plans and coordinates indirect fire support and or close air support, if available.
- e. Identifies direct fire responsibilities.
- f. Plans the integration of direct and indirect fires in accordance with (IAW) higher headquarters' fire support plan.
- g. Plans and coordinates combat service support (CSS).
- h. Determines visual, and or voice recognition signals (far and near).
- i. Develops and or determines control measures.
- j. Determines frequencies, call signs, code words and codes.
- k. Determines command relationship with the linkup unit.
- l. Develops contingency plans.
  - (1) Plans for enemy contact before, during, or after linkup.
  - (2) Coordinates how long to wait at the linkup site.
  - (3) Plans what to do when some elements do not arrive at the linkup site.
  - (4) Plans alternate linkup points and rally points.
- m. Organizes the company as necessary to accomplish the mission and or compensate for combat losses.

\* 5. Company commander or designated representative conducts a reconnaissance of the route and site, if possible.

\* 6. Company commander or designated representative coordinates with the linkup element.

- a. Exchanges frequencies, call signs, and codes.
- b. Confirms visual signals and alternatives (near and far recognition signals).
- c. Exchanges fire coordination and or control measures (for example, restrictive fire line).
- d. Confirms command relationship with the linkup unit. (Who is in charge if the enemy attacks during linkup?) (Who is in charge after linkup?)

\* 7. Company commander disseminates overlays, and other pertinent information to each platoon to keep them abreast of the situation.

\* 8. Company commander issues orders and instructions to include rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).

- a. Issues clear and concise taskings to platoons and or elements.

9. Company conducts a rehearsal.

10. Each linkup element moves to a point short of the linkup point and establishes a rally point.

Note: The linkup rally point should be a safe distance from the linkup point (about 300 Meters) and should provide cover and concealment.

- a. Moves tactically to the linkup rally point.
- b. Reports its en route location to higher headquarters and other linkup element (if using radio communications) using phase lines, checkpoints, or other control measures.
- c. Establishes local security at the rally point.

\* 11. Company commander coordinates and or synchronizes actions of subordinate elements.

\* 12. Company commander uses fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) as necessary to redirect actions of subordinate elements.

13. Elements conduct linkup.

a. Conduct the following (FIRST element to arrive at the linkup point).

- (1) Sends a security team forward to confirm the exact location of the linkup point (may be mounted or dismounted and may include the element leader).
  - (a) Clears the immediate area around the linkup point.
  - (b) Marks the linkup point with the coordinated recognition signal.
  - (c) Positions security team in covered and concealed positions that over watch the linkup point.
  - (d) Returns to the linkup rally point and brings the element forward to the linkup point (if the entire element must linkup). (May use designated signal.)
- (2) Elements moves tactically to the linkup point.
  - (a) Establishes a perimeter defense.
  - (b) Prepares to accept the moving unit at the linkup point.
  - (c) Establishes communications with the other element.

(b.) Conduct the following (SECOND element to arrive at the linkup point).

- (1) Sends a security team forward to confirm the exact location of the linkup point.
- (2) Makes contact with the element at the linkup point.
  - (a) Gives the far recognition signal.
  - (b) Advances and exchanges near recognition signals with element on the linkup point.
- (3) Returns to the linkup rally point and brings the element forward to the linkup point (if the entire element must linkup). (May use designated signal.)
- (4) Element moves tactically to the linkup point.
  - (a) Element is incorporated into the perimeter defense.

14. Company continues the mission in accordance with (IAW) the operation order (OPORD), fragmentary order (FRAGO), and or guidance from higher headquarters after the linkup.

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

**Task Title**

- Take Action on Contact (Infantry Company)
- Report Tactical Information (Infantry Company)
- Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Infantry Company)
- Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Infantry Company)
- Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry Company)
- Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Antiarmor/Infantry Company)
- Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)
- Maintain Operations Security (Infantry Company)



- (COAs), and specific weapons capabilities.
- b. Conducts a map reconnaissance. Identifies.
  - (1) Identifies passage points and passage lanes (primary and alternate).
  - (2) Identifies security, support by fire, and assault positions, if applicable.
  - (3) Identifies likely enemy avenues of approach.
  - (4) Marks tentative dismount points on maps as appropriate.
- c. Plans and coordinates indirect fire support and or close air support, if available.
- d. Identifies direct fire responsibilities.
- e. Organizes the company as necessary to accomplish the mission and or compensate for combat losses.
- f. Verifies known obstacle types and locations.
- g. Verifies call signs and frequencies of the stationary unit.
- h. Verifies and or designates visual recognition signals (far and near).
- i. Verifies and or designates fire coordination measures.
- j. Verifies the command relationship with the stationary unit.
- k. Verifies actions to take place following coordination of the passage.
- l. Addresses actions on chance contact with the enemy before, during and after the passage.

\* 5. Company commander or designated representative conducts coordination with the stationary unit using radio or other tactical means. Note: The commander or company representative may be required to coordinate the passage of lines either for the company alone or for the higher headquarters.

- a. Exchanges and or coordinates the following information:
  - (1) Signal operating instructions (SOI) information.
  - (2) Number and or type of vehicles involved in the passage.
  - (3) Estimated time of arrival of vehicles and markings of the first and last vehicles.
  - (4) Recognition signals.
  - (5) Updated enemy situation.
  - (6) Friendly situation and or disposition.
  - (7) Terrain analysis.
  - (8) Supporting fires information, to include available assets, smoke data, and target numbers and or locations.
  - (9) Locations of friendly obstacles and applicable breaching information, to include any routes through obstacles.
  - (10) Command post location.
  - (11) Contact points (primary, alternate).
  - (12) Passage lanes data, to include alternate routes, start point (SP), release point (RP), passage points, and checkpoints.
  - (13) Location and number of guides and number and type of vehicles.
  - (14) Time of passage.
  - (15) Rally points (both near and far) and assembly areas.
  - (16) Line of departure (LD).
  - (17) Battle hand over line (BHL) and time the transfer of

responsibility for the control of the sector will take place.  
(18) Combat service support (CSS) information, including the following:

- (a) Resupply of Classes III and V.
- (b) Medical evacuation assets.
- (c) Handling of enemy prisoners of war (EPWs).
- (d) Maintenance requirements and available assets.

(19) Actions on contact if enemy are encountered during the passage.

- \* 6. If FACE TO FACE coordination is required, the company commander or designated representative conducts linkup with the stationary unit.
  - a. Initiates tactical movement toward the designated contact point as directed in the operation order (OPORD) and or fragmentary order (FRAGO).
  - b. Establishes communications with the stationary unit prior to entering the effective range of the stationary unit's direct fire weapons.
    - (1) Authenticates correctly.
    - (2) Informs the stationary unit of number and type of company vehicles and direction from which the company is traveling.
    - (3) Requests information from the stationary unit on number and type of vehicles, direction of weapons orientation, and location of dismounts on the ground.
    - (4) Determines whether company is needed to provide additional security at the contact point.
    - (5) Confirms short range recognition signal (hand-and-arm, flags, flashlight, or pyrotechnics).
- \* 7. Company commander or designated representative completes coordination and preparations for the passage.
  - a. Conducts tactical movement back to the company position, if applicable.
  - b. Passes all pertinent information and or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to the company using radio or other tactical means.
  - c. Reports all pertinent information from the coordination to the higher commander, if acting as liaison for higher headquarters uses radio other tactical means.
  - d. Directs subordinate element commanders to complete troop leading procedures required to plan the passage.
- \* 8. Company commander disseminates overlays, and other pertinent information to each platoon to keep them abreast of the situation.
- \* 9. Company commander issues orders and instructions to include rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).
  - a. Issues clear and concise taskings to platoons and or elements.
- 10. Company conducts a rehearsal.
- \*11. Company commander coordinates/synchronizes actions of subordinate elements.

- \*12. Company commander uses fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) as necessary to redirect actions of subordinate elements.
13. Company elements conduct tactical movement to the passage point.
- a. Use covered and concealed routes to the maximum extent possible.
  - b. Use most advantageous formation and movement technique based on factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC).
  - c. Maintain proper weapons orientation to ensure 360-degree security based on the formation selected.
14. Company elements move through the passage point.
- a. Establish communications and or enter the net of the stationary unit using radio or other tactical means.
  - b. Display designated recognition signal on all vehicles, if applicable (vehicle commanders).
  - c. Report arrival time at the passage point to higher headquarters using radio other tactical means.
  - d. Pass through the passage point without halting or blocking it.
15. Company elements move along the passage lane.
- a. Conduct tactical movement through the passage lane.
  - b. Orient weapon systems in the direction of known or suspected enemy contact.
  - c. Follow directions given by guides at traffic control points.
  - d. Use alternate lanes if the situation dictates.
- Note: In the event of vehicle breakdown, the element continues to move and does not stop in the passage lane. The crew of the disabled vehicle moves it out of the flow of traffic, if possible, and attempts to repair it. If necessary, the crew waits with the vehicle until it can be recovered or repaired.
- \* 16. Company commander or representative keeps higher headquarters informed using radio or other tactical means.
- a. Reports graphic control measures for passage.
  - b. Sends situation report (SITREP) as necessary during execution.
  - c. Reports completion of the passage.
17. If the passage is forward, the company crosses the battle hand over line (BHL) and continues the mission.
18. If the passage is rearward, the company crosses the battle hand over line (BHL) and takes specified actions.
- a. Moves to the location designated in the operation order (OPORD) without halting or blocking the passage lane.
  - b. Conducts the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP) steps, or troop leading procedures for hasty occupation of an assembly area as specified in the operation order (OPORD).

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

**Task Title**

- React to Snipers (Infantry Company)
- Take Action on Contact (Infantry Company)
- Report Tactical Information (Infantry Company)
- Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)
- Prepare for Combat (Infantry Company)
- Maintain Operations Security (Infantry Company)



- headquarters.
- (b) Signal operating instructions (SOI) information.
- (c) Passing unit designation.
- (d) Number/type of vehicles involved in the passage.
- (e) Estimated time of arrival of vehicles and markings of the first and last vehicles.
- (f) Order of march.
- (g) Recognition signals.
- (h) Guide requirements.
- (2) Provides the following as appropriate:
  - (a) Friendly situation and or disposition.
  - (b) Updated enemy situation.
  - (c) Terrain analysis.
  - (d) Supporting fires information to include available assets, smoke data, and target numbers and or locations.
  - (e) Locations of friendly obstacles and applicable breaching information, to include any routes through obstacles.
  - (f) Time of passage.
  - (g) Rally points and assembly area locations.
  - (h) Location of the line of departure (LD).
  - (i) Location of the battle handover line (BHL) and time the transfer of responsibility for the control of the sector will take place.
  - (j) Location of attack positions.
  - (k) Information for resupply of Classes III and V.
  - (l) Information for medical evacuation assets.
  - (m) Information for handling of enemy prisoners of war (EPW).
  - (n) Information for maintenance requirements and available assets.

\* 4. Company commander briefs subordinate leaders on mission and directs them to designate guide personnel.

a. Briefs:

- (1) Enemy situation.
- (2) Attack positions or assembly areas.
- (3) Contact points (primary, alternate).
- (4) Passage lane data, to include alternate routes, start point (SP), release point (RP), passage points, and checkpoints.
- (5) Location and number of guides and number and or type of vehicles, if applicable.
- (6) Recognition signals
- (7) Appropriate signal operating instructions (SOI) information.

\* 5. Company commander disseminates overlays to each subordinate element to keep them abreast of the situation.

6. Designated company leadership briefs guide personnel on duties.

\* 7. Company commander issues orders and instructions to include rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).

<p>a. Issues clear and concise taskings to platoons and or elements.</p> <p>8. Company conducts rehearsal.</p> <p>* 9. Company commander issues fragmentary orders (FRAGOs), as necessary, to address changes to the plan identified during the rehearsal.</p> <p>* 10. Company commander coordinates and or synchronizes actions of company elements.</p> <p>* 11. Company commander uses fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) as necessary to redirect actions of subordinate elements.</p> <p>12. Guide personnel move to appropriate positions and begin activities to support the passage.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Establish overwatch positions.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Reconnoiter and mark route for the passing unit.</p> <p>13. Guide personnel open passage lane.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Ensure lane provides adequate maneuver space for all passing unit vehicles.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Assume positions to provide all around defense for the passage.</p> <p>14. Guide personnel perform linkup with the passing unit and brief unit leaders as necessary.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Execute near and far recognition signals.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Verify restrictive fire line (RFL) and battle hand over line (BHL) as necessary.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">c. Overwatch the passage and provides security as needed.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">d. Close passage lane and any lanes through obstacles as required.</p> <p>15. Company guides the passing unit and completes passage of lines actions.</p> <p>* 16. Company commander reports the completion of the passage to higher headquarters.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Direct the passing unit along specified routes to designated location(s) beyond the passage lane.</p>		
---	--	--

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

---

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

**Task Title**

Report Tactical Information (Infantry Company)

Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Company)

Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Company)

Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)

Maintain Operations Security (Infantry Company)



\* 4. Company commander plans the tactical road march using troop-leading procedures.

- a. Conducts mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civilian considerations (METT-TC) analysis.
  - (1) Considers the enemy's capabilities, likely courses of action (COAs), and specific weapons capabilities.
- b. Conducts a map reconnaissance.
  - (1) Identifies the route, if not provided.
  - (2) Identifies likely enemy avenues of approach.
  - (3) Marks tentative dismount points on maps as appropriate.
  - (4) Identifies critical areas; e.g., danger areas, defiles, and choke points, traffic control points, as well as rest and maintenance areas.
  - (5) Determines assembly area or bivouac areas.
  - (6) Identifies start point (SP) and release point (RP).
- c. Determines the formation to be used.
- d. Determines rate of march.
- e. Determines march interval.
- f. Determines order of march.
- g. Determines time at which the head or tail of the column is to pass the start point (SP) and critical points.
- h. Communications for use during the march.
- i. Location of command post.
- j. Determines quartering party requirements.
- k. Determines and or coordinates combat service support (CSS) requirements.
- l. Plans and coordinates indirect fire support and or close air support, if available.
- m. Develops graphic control measures; e.g., check points, phase lines, scheduled halt points.
- n. Organizes the company as necessary to accomplish the mission and or compensate for combat losses.
- o. Determines the soldier's load, based on the mission.
- p. Addresses actions on chance contact with the enemy.

\* 5. Company commander organizes and dispatches reconnaissance element, if time permits.

- a. Confirms available routes and conditions (routes may be specified by higher headquarters).
- b. Confirms start point (SP) and release point (RP) suitability.
- c. Confirms assembly or bivouac area location.
- d. Confirms checkpoint locations on the route, if required.
- e. Confirms distance between checkpoints on the route and total distance from start point (SP) to release point (RP).
- f. Locates and marks obstacles.
- g. Determines the number of guides required and their route location.

\* 6. Company commander disseminates overlays, and other pertinent information to each platoon to keep them abreast of the situation.

\* 7. Company commander issues orders and instructions to include rules of

engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).

- a. Issues clear and concise taskings to platoons and or elements.

8. Company conducts a rehearsal.

9. Company moves to a marshalling area as necessary.

\* 10. Company commander briefs and dispatches the quartering party, if required. (If conducting the road march as part of a higher headquarters, quartering party activities may not be required of the company.)

- a. Conducts reconnaissance tasks, if time did not permit the dispatching of a reconnaissance element.
- b. Provides guides along the route as necessary.
- c. Reports and engages any enemy observed, as ordered.

\* 11. Company commander positions himself where he can best control the movement of the platoons.

\* 12. Company commander directs company elements to begin movement toward the start point (SP).

- a. Use the designated formation, movement technique, and, rate of march.
- b. Positions himself where he can best control the movement of the company/platoon.
- c. Uses visual signals, or radio to communicate with company in accordance with (IAW) operation order (OPORD)/ fragmentary order (FRAGO)/ tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP).

13. Company elements move along the march route.

- a. Cross the start point (SP) at the designated time in accordance with (IAW), operation order (OPORD)/ fragmentary order (FRAGO).
- b. Maintain proper march speed to reach checkpoints at times specified in the order.
- c. Report control measures in accordance with (IAW) operation order (OPORD)/ fragmentary order (FRAGO)/ tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP) using radio or other tactical means.
- d. Maintain 360 degree observation, including aerial observation.
- e. Maintain proper weapons orientation to provide 360 degree security throughout the road march as prescribed in the operation order (OPORD)/fragmentary order (FRAGO)/ tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP).
- f. Conduct scheduled halts at regular intervals in accordance with (IAW) the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP) (as the tactical situation permits).
  - (1) Direct personnel to clear the route and to relax by sitting or lying down and by loosening their equipment.
    - (a) Maintain security as necessary.
  - (2) Conduct foot inspections.
  - (3) Maintains water, sanitation, light, noise, and safety discipline.
  - (4) Adjust personnel loads, if necessary.
- g. Bypass obstacles, if possible.

<p>h. Arrive at check or release points at the time specified.</p> <p>i. Report the company's position to higher headquarters, as required.</p> <p>14. Company conducts unscheduled halts as necessary.</p> <p>a. Clears route of march and establishes local security in accordance with (IAW), operation order (OPORD)/ fragmentary order (FRAGO)/ tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP).</p> <p>b. Reports unscheduled halts to higher headquarters using radio, or other tactical means.</p> <p>c. Correct the cause of the halt, if possible.</p> <p>d. Continues along the route.</p> <p>15. Company elements react to hostile contact as appropriate.</p> <p>a. Consolidate and reorganize as necessary.</p> <p>b. Secure enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.</p> <p>c. Treat and evacuate casualties.</p> <p>d. Continue the march when directed or as soon as possible.</p> <p>16. Company elements arrive at and move through the release point (RP).</p> <p>a. Report arrival at and the completion of the move through the release point (RP) using radio, or other tactical means.</p> <p>b. Pass through the release point without halting.</p> <p>c. Meet and follow quartering party guides and moves to the designated company area.</p> <p>d. Adjust and redistributes equipment and performs foot hygiene.</p> <p>e. Orient weapons, as directed, to establish unit local security.</p> <p>f. Ensure leaders check the condition of all personnel (for foot problems).</p> <p>(1) Ensure that soldiers obtain food, water, shelter, and rest.</p> <p>(2) Ensure soldiers are ready to accomplish their tactical mission.</p> <p>(3) Ensure medical attention where needed.</p> <p>g. Use the proper dispersion and camouflage.</p> <p>h. Perform equipment cross loading as necessary.</p> <p>i. Consolidate and reorganize as necessary.</p> <p>j. Process enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.</p> <p>k. Process captured documents and or equipment as required.</p> <p>17. Company continues operations as directed.</p>		
--	--	--

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

### **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

#### **Task Title**

Locate Mines by Visual Means  
 Neutralize Booby Traps  
 Locate a Target by Grid Coordinates  
 Locate a Target by Shift from a Known Point  
 Engage Targets with an AK-47 Rifle  
 Load an AK47 Rifle  
 Unload an AK-47 Rifle  
 Correct Malfunctions of an AK-47 Rifle  
 Unload a PKM Machine Gun  
 Perform Safety Checks on Hand Grenades  
 Employ Hand Grenades  
 Move as a Member of a Fire Team  
 Move Under Direct Fire  
 Move Over, Through, or Around Obstacles (Except Minefields)  
 React to Indirect Fire While Dismounted  
 React to Flares  
 Select Temporary Fighting Positions  
 Select a Movement Route Using a Map  
 Control Movement of a Fire Team  
 Select an Overwatch Position  
 Conduct the Maneuver of a Squad  
 Conduct Movement Techniques by a Platoon  
 Coordinate with an Adjacent Platoon  
 Identify Topographic Symbols on a Military Map  
 Identify Terrain Features on a Map  
 Determine the Grid Coordinates of a Point on a Military Map  
 Determine a Magnetic Azimuth Using a Lensatic Compass  
 Determine the Elevation of a Point on the Ground Using a Map  
 Determine a Location on the Ground b Terrain Association  
 Navigate from One Point on the Ground to Another Point While Dismounted  
 Measure Distance on a Map  
 Convert Azimuths  
 Orient a Map Using a Lensatic Compass  
 Orient a Map to the Ground by Map-Terrain Association  
 Locate an Unknown Point on a Map and on the Ground by Intersection

## **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS Cont'd**

### **Task Title**

Locate an Unknown Point on a Map and on the Ground by Resection  
Use a Map Overlay  
Challenge Persons Entering Your Area  
Perform Surveillance without the Aid of Electronic Devices  
Practice Noise, Light, and Litter Discipline  
Analyze Terrain  
Conduct a Leader's Reconnaissance  
Plan for Use of Supporting Fires  
Conduct the Maneuver of a Platoon  
Determine Azimuths Using a Protractor  
Control Use of Night Vision Devices  
REQUEST MEDICAL EVACUATION  
Request Medical Evacuation  
USE AN AUTOMATED SIGNAL OPERATION INSTRUCTION (SOI)

### **SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS NONE**



<p>(1) Considers the enemy's capabilities, likely courses of action (COAs), and specific weapons capabilities.</p> <p>b. Conducts a map reconnaissance.</p> <p>(1) Marks tentative dismount points on maps as appropriate.</p> <p>(2) Marks rally points that are easily identifiable.</p> <p>(3) Identifies likely enemy avenues of approach.</p> <p>(4) Identifies routes to and from the rally points.</p> <p>(5) Identifies infiltration and or exfiltration routes.</p> <p>c. Plans and coordinates indirect fire support and or close air support, if available.</p> <p>d. Identifies direct fire responsibilities.</p> <p>e. Plans the integration of direct and indirect fires in accordance with (IAW) higher headquarters' fire support plan.</p> <p>f. Plans and coordinates combat service support (CSS).</p> <p>g. Coordinates and synchronizes activities within each battlefield operating system (BOS).</p> <p>h. Organizes the company to facilitate control of the infiltration and or exfiltration.</p> <p>(1) Decides whether to move the entire company together through the company's lane or to assign each platoon a separate infiltration or exfiltration lane.</p> <p>i. Coordinates for passage of lines with forward or rear unit, if necessary.</p> <p>j. Coordinates with flank units, if necessary.</p> <p>k. Establishes control measures.</p> <p>l. Addresses actions on chance contact with the enemy.</p> <p>m. Selects and or designates methods of communications.</p> <p>(1) Determines signals to minimize radio traffic.</p> <p>* 5. Company commander employs patrols to find routes, gaps, and weaknesses in enemy positions.</p> <p>a. Selects routes that avoid areas occupied or covered by enemy elements.</p> <p>b. Ensures routes provide cover and concealment.</p> <p>c. Verifies and updates intelligence information.</p> <p>d. Returns to company position.</p> <p>* 6. Company commander assigns lanes and release points (RP) to subordinate elements.</p> <p>* 7. Company commander disseminates overlays, and other pertinent information to each platoon to keep them abreast of the situation.</p> <p>* 8. Company commander issues orders and instructions to include rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).</p> <p>a. Issues clear and concise taskings to platoons and or elements.</p> <p>9. Company conducts a rehearsal.</p> <p>a. Tailors each dismounted soldier's load to the minimum required for the operation.</p>		
---	--	--

\* 10. Company commander issues fragmentary orders (FRAGOs), as necessary, to address changes to the plan identified during the rehearsal.

\* 11. Company commander coordinates and or synchronizes actions of subordinate elements.

\* 12. Company commander uses fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) as necessary to redirect actions of subordinate elements.

13. Company INFILTRATES.

- a. Conducts forward passage of lines.
- b. Maintains communications during movement.
- c. Separates into infiltrating elements at designated rally points.
- d. Takes advantage of gaps and weaknesses in enemy positions, as well as limited visibility, bad weather, and broken terrain affording cover and concealment.
- e. Avoids enemy contact whenever possible.

Note: If contact is made, avoids becoming decisively engaged, breaks contact, and continues movement to the rally point.

(1) Avoids enemy contact by halting and hiding.

- f. Maintains dispersion and strict noise, light, and camouflage discipline.
- g. Infiltrates by entire company or by separate platoons as specified during planning.
- h. Uses battlefield noise (including artillery) to mask movement.
- i. Engages the enemy as necessary, using support by fire and or indirect fires.

14. Company elements conduct linkup at rally point, if necessary.

- a. Conducts long-range recognition signals and or communications.
  - (1) Establishes communications before entering direct fire weapon range.
  - (2) Authenticates correctly and or responds to challenges in accordance with (IAW) the signal operating instructions (SOI), as necessary.
  - (3) Confirms short-range recognition symbols.
- b. Completes linkup, taking these actions.
  - (1) Conducts short-range recognition.
  - (2) Completes movement to rally point.
- c. Establish local security at rally point.

15. Company conducts actions on the rally point.

- a. Consolidates and reorganizes.
- b. Secures enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.
- c. Reports completion of linkup to the higher commander, using radio or other tactical means.
- d. Treats and evacuates casualties.
- e. Secures and or processes captured documents and or equipment as required.

16. Company continues operations as directed.

<p>17. Company sends updated situation reports (SITREP) to the higher commander as necessary.</p> <p>18. Company EXFILTRATES.  Note: Planning and performance steps for exfiltration generally mirror those for infiltration. A rearward passage of lines would be conducted.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.</li> <li>b. Directs reconnaissance to find routes, gaps, and weaknesses in enemy positions.</li> <li>c. Secures enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.</li> <li>d. Conducts movement to designated area following rearward passage of lines.</li> <li>e. Reports completion of exfiltration to higher commander, using other tactical means.</li> <li>f. Treats and evacuates casualties.</li> <li>g. Processes captured documents and or equipment as required.</li> </ol> <p>19. Company continues operations as directed.</p>		
--	--	--

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**  
**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

**Task Title**

- Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Tactical Movement (Infantry Company)
- Take Action on Contact (Infantry Company)
- Conduct a Route Reconnaissance (Infantry Company)
- Report Tactical Information (Infantry Company)
- Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Infantry Company)
- Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Infantry Company)
- Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry Company)
- Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Infantry Company)
- Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)
- Prepare for Combat (Infantry Company)
- Maintain Operations Security (Infantry Company)



element.

- d. Determines composition (number and type of vehicles) of the convoy.
- e. Determines order of march.
- f. Determines primary and alternate routes of march.
- g. Determines graphic control measures for primary and alternate routes.
- h. Determines availability of strip maps.
- i. Determines location of company in relation to convoy (advanced guard, main body, or rear guard).
- j. Determines fire coordination measures.
- k. Determines actions at halts (scheduled and unscheduled).
- l. Determines actions on contact.
- m. Determines actions in case of vehicle breakdown.
- n. Determines actions for a break in column.
- o. Determines actions in built up areas.
- p. Determines riot control procedures.
- q. Determines refugee control measures and convoy actions.
- r. Determine actions at the delivery site.
- s. Determines guidelines and procedures for negotiating with local authorities if required.
- t. Determines communications and signal information (visual).
- u. Considers the enemy's capabilities, likely course of actions (COAs), and specific weapons capabilities.
- v. Organizes the company as necessary to accomplish the mission and or compensate for combat losses.
  - (1) Designates advance guard, close-in protective group, and rear guard.
- w. Plans/coordinates combat service support (CSS).

\* 5. Company commander briefs subordinate leaders on escort plan.

\* 6. Company commander disseminates overlays, and other pertinent information to each platoon to keep them abreast of the situation.

\* 7. Company commander issues orders and instructions to include rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).

- a. Issues clear and concise taskings to platoons/elements.

8. Company conducts a rehearsal.

- a. Directs company to conduct pre-combat checks and inspections.

\* 9. Company commander issues fragmentary orders (FRAGOs), as necessary, to address changes to the plan identified during the rehearsal.

10. Company conducts linkup with the convoy, if required.

Note: In some situations, linkup may occur before the company commander conducts and or completes troop leading procedures.

- a. Conducts tactical movement to linkup point.
- b. Uses far and near recognition signals as appropriate.
- c. Occupies covered and concealed position at the linkup site.

- d. Coordinates with the escorted element to determine any changes to or verify company tasks, convoy actions, and other details of the escort mission.
- e. Directs inspection of escorted vehicles, if time is available.

11. Company elements execute convoy escort.

- a. Executes advanced guard.

Note: The advanced guard may be task organized with reconnaissance and mobility assets and linguists as necessary.

- (1) Reconnoiters and clears the convoy route.
- (2) Uses most advantageous formation and movement technique if not assigned.
- (3) Uses covered and concealed routes if possible.
- (4) Searches for signs of enemy activity such as ambushes and obstacles.
- (5) Identifies obstacles.
- (6) Maintains proper weapons orientation to ensure 360 degree security.
- (7) Conducts actions on contact.

- b. Executes close-in protection for main body.

- (1) Remains oriented on the route.
- (2) Uses most advantageous and or assigned formation and movement technique.
- (3) Uses covered and concealed routes.
- (4) Covers all lateral and boundary routes.
- (5) Maintains proper weapons orientation to ensure 360 degree or flank security.
- (6) Conducts actions on contact.

- c. Executes rear guard.

Note: The rear guard serves as a reserve and will either move with the convoy or be located at a staging area close enough to provide immediate action against enemy forces.

- (1) Reacts as directed against enemy forces.
- (2) Provides security in the area behind the main body of the vehicle column.

12. Company executes actions at halts, for any reason other than an obstacle.

- a. Moves off the route and takes up protected positions forward to the rear and to the flanks (up to 100 meters beyond the convoy vehicles) and orient weapons systems outwards.
- b. Remains at REDCON-1.
- c. Establishes dismounted local security.

- (1) Once the convoy is reestablished in column, local security elements (if used) return to their escort vehicles, if applicable, and rejoins the column.

Note: When the order is given to move out, convoy vehicles reestablish movement formation, leaving space for escort vehicles.

13. Company elements execute actions on contact.

Note: Portions of the convoy escort force, such as a mobile gun system

(MGS) platoon or section, may be designated as a reaction force. The reaction force is then directed to execute its "Be Prepared to Mission" by the convoy commander.

a. Execute actions at an ambush.

- (1) Lay down suppressive fires in the direction of the attack and attempts to quickly clear the kill zone.
- (2) Seek covered positions between the convoy and the enemy and suppresses the enemy with the highest possible volume of fire permitted by the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).
- (3) Push damaged/disabled vehicles off route or bypasses them.
- (4) Send contact reports to higher headquarters as quickly as possible using other radio or tactical means.
- (5) Request support from the reaction force or other company elements using radio or other tactical means as necessary.
- (6) Request indirect fires to suppress/destroy the enemy (lifting and shifting the fires when the platoon assaults) using radio or other tactical means.
- (7) Request smoke between the enemy and the convoy to obscure the enemy's line of sight using radio or other tactical means.
- (8) Execute one of the following courses of action (COAs), once the convoy is clear of the kill zone. (Action is based on the composition of the escort and reaction forces, the commander's intent, and the strength of the enemy force.)
  - (a) Continue to suppress the enemy as the rear guard and or reaction force moves to provide support.
  - (b) Break contact and moves out of the kill zone.

Note: In most situations, escort vehicles, if applicable, will continue to suppress the enemy or execute an assault. Contact should be broken only with the approval of the higher commander.

- (c) Assault the enemy

14. Company advance guard conducts actions at a point type obstacle.

- a. Identifies the obstacle.
- b. Directs the convoy to make a short halt.
- c. Moves to the flanks of the convoy and establishes and maintains mounted and dismounted (360 degree) security.
- d. Sends a contact report to the convoy commander using radio or other tactical means.
  - (1) Recommends bypassing the obstacle.
  - (2) Recommends breaching the obstacle with assets on hand.
    - (a) Requests the breach force to come forward.
  - (3) Recommends requesting additional breaching assets.
- e. Provides overwatch as the breach force comes forward, and recons for a bypass.

15. Company reduces or bypasses the obstacle and maintains protection for the convoy.

16. Company consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.

<p>a. Reports situational report (SITREP) to higher using radio or other tactical means.</p> <p>17. Company secures enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.</p> <p>18. Company treats and evacuates casualties.</p> <p>19. Company processes captured documents and or equipment as required.</p> <p>20. Company continues operations as directed.</p>		
--	--	--

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

**Task Title**

- Conduct Actions at Danger Areas (Company/Platoon)
- Conduct Tactical Movement (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Tactical Movement in a Built-up Area (Infantry Company)
- Take Action on Contact (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)
- Take Action on Contact (Infantry Company)
- Report Tactical Information (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)
- Report Tactical Information (Infantry Company)
- Employ Fire Support (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)
- Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Infantry Company)
- Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)
- Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry Company)
- Conduct a Rehearsal (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)
- Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)
- Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Risk Management (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)
- Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)
- Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)
- Prepare for Combat (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)

## **SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS Cont'd**

### **Task Title**

Prepare for Combat (Infantry Company)

Maintain Operations Security (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)

Maintain Operations Security (Infantry Company)

Traverse a Built-up Area (Antiarmor/Infantry Company)



<p>(1) Considers the enemy's capabilities, likely courses of action (COAs), and specific weapons capabilities.</p> <p>b. Conducts a map reconnaissance.</p> <p>(1) Identifies screen trace, orientation, lateral and rear boundaries, and named areas of interest (NAI).</p> <p>(2) Identifies tentative observation post (OP) positions.</p> <p>(3) Identifies likely enemy avenues of approach.</p> <p>(4) Identifies route(s) to be taken to conduct the screen.</p> <p>c. Identifies duration of the screen and time to be active.</p> <p>d. Confirms location, disposition, and mission of force being screened.</p> <p>e. Identifies requirements with flank units and the force being screened.</p> <p>f. Identifies requirements for additional maneuver, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) assets.</p> <p>g. Plans the integration of direct and indirect fires in accordance with (IAW) higher headquarters' fire support plan.</p> <p>h. Identifies passage of lines requirements.</p> <p>i. Identifies engagement criteria.</p> <p>j. Identifies displacement and or disengagement criteria.</p> <p>k. Confirms priorities.</p> <p>l. Develops the screen plan.</p> <p>(1) Prioritizes assigned tasks, as necessary.</p> <p>(2) Task organizes company's organic and nonorganic elements to best accomplish higher commander's intent.</p> <p>(3) Designates mounted and or dismounted observation post (OP) positions to cover named area of interests (NAIs) and avenues of approach, as necessary.</p> <p>(4) Plans use of sensor surveillance assets to augment mounted/dismounted observation posts (Ops), as necessary.</p> <p>(5) Develops reconnaissance plan in accordance with (IAW), operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO), rules of engagement (ROE), and or commander's guidance.</p> <p>(6) Develops movement plan based on the screen mission technique.</p> <p>(7) Conducts initial coordination with unit being screened for possible passage of lines/battle hand over.</p> <p>(8) Conducts coordination with flank units, as needed</p> <p>(9) Designates technique of movement, formation, and speed to the screen line.</p> <p>* 4. Company commander disseminates overlays, and other pertinent information to each crew to keep them abreast of the situation.</p> <p>* 5. Company commander issues orders and instructions to include rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).</p> <p>a. Issues clear and concise taskings to platoons and or elements.</p> <p>6. Company conducts a rehearsal.</p> <p>* 7. Company commander or designated representative and reconnaissance element conducts the reconnaissance based on factors of</p>		
--	--	--

mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civilian considerations, (METT-TC).

- a. Conducts a passage of lines, if required.
- b. Pinpoints the objective and or screen line.
- c. Establishes security, if required.
- d. Selects positions.
- e. Verifies and updates intelligence information.
- f. Leaves a surveillance team to observe positions.
- g. Returns to company position.

8. Company moves to screen line.

- a. Conducts battle hand over with protected force and or follow-on screen force as required.
- b. Reports screen establishment to higher headquarter's commander.

\* 9. Company commander coordinates and or synchronizes actions of subordinate elements.

\* 10. Company commander uses fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) as necessary to redirect actions of subordinate elements.

11. Company conducts screen.

- a. Establishes observation posts (Ops) along or slightly forward of the initial screen line as dictated by terrain.
- b. Allows no enemy ground element to pass through the screen undetected and unreported.
- c. Maintains continuous surveillance of enemy elements in the area of operations (AO).
- d. Detects all enemy activity in the area of operations (AO).
- e. Provides early warning to the screened unit.
- f. Maintains contact with the enemy, once contact is made.
- g. Reports any activity in the area of operations (AO).
- h. Maintains contact with the main body and any security forces opposite its flanks.
- i. Destroys or repels all enemy reconnaissance patrols using available systems and support.
- j. Impedes and harasses the enemy using available systems and support.
- k. Destroys enemy reconnaissance elements using available systems and support.
- l. Moves to keep pace with the main body, of the screened force, by moving or displacing observation posts (Ops) or moving tactically at a designated interval from the main body. (If a moving screen is being executed.)
- m. Guides higher headquarters reaction forces, if designated.
- n. Conducts patrols between observation posts (Ops) and in areas that cannot be observed, as the situation permits.
- o. Withdraws to the subsequent screen line on order.
- p. Uses all available night and thermal observation devices and electronic surveillance devices during limited visibility.
- q. Complies with rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of

interaction (ROI).		
<p>12. Upon completion of the screen mission, the company completes the following as necessary.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.</li> <li>b. Secures enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.</li> <li>c. Treats and evacuates casualties.</li> <li>d. Processes captured documents and or equipment as required.</li> <li>e. Continues operations as directed.</li> </ul>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

**Task Title**

- Conduct Tactical Movement (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)
- Prepare for Combat (Infantry Company)

## TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINE

**TASK:** Conduct Operations during Limited Visibility (Infantry Company) (07-2-1306-A)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is conducting operations as part of a larger force and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a mission during limited visibility conditions. The company has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The company has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company conducts the mission in accordance with (IAW) tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and or commander's intent and guidance. The company plans for and uses all available devices used to enhance vision during limited visibility and surveillance devices in the unit. The company meets the standards of the task being conducted (i.e. raid, attack, ambush). The company complies with the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO GO</b>
<p>Note: Any company task may be executed during limited visibility conditions. The following outline covers planning for the execution of operations during limited visibility. The training and evaluation outline (T&amp;EO) for the assigned mission (Conduct a Raid, Conduct an Ambush, and so forth) should be used in conjunction with this outline.</p> <p>* 1. Company commander gains and or maintains situational understanding using information that is gathered from maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.</p> <p>*2. Company commander plans for operations during limited visibility.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Considers light and terrain when identifying weapons positions.</li> <li>b. Requests updated weather information from higher. (includes light conditions).</li> <li>c. Considers reduced light levels when developing graphics and sketches.</li> <li>d. Identifies and or coordinates for surveillance devices needed for the mission.</li> <li>e. Considers all possible situations when planning for the use of surveillance devices such as deteriorating weather, disorientation, loss of depth perception, and equipment failure.</li> <li>f. Develops a plan.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Integrates the use surveillance devices to obtain the best coverage of the area of operations and to make best use of the</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

abilities of the various devices

(2) Is simple yet maintains the necessary level of detail.

(3) Takes advantage of the greatest use of available daylight for reconnaissance.

(4) Considers the employment of cover or concealment.

g. Develops tactical control procedures.

(1) Enforces standard operating procedures (SOP) for friendly identification. (Includes radio along with other established audible and visual signals).

(2) Reduces the rate of movement and enforces closer intervals so visual contact between company members can be maintained.

(3) Uses guides to assist navigation when possible.

(4) Uses low-light sources to mark boundaries.

(5) Uses landmarks to maintain direction.

(6) Uses preplanned indirect fire targets to help determine location and direction.

\*3. Company commander or designated representative briefs the following as a minimum.

a. Briefs weather including sunset, moon rise, moon set, percent moon available, ambient light level, and effect of cloud coverage on ambient light levels. (Weather forecasts should cover from one hour before mission begins).

b. Briefs visibility restrictions such as smoke, haze, or fog.

c. Briefs formations.

d. Briefs possible hazard and obstructions located in the area of operations.

e. Briefs mission to be performed.

f. Briefs vehicle and or equipment preparation.

g. Briefs communications (predetermined audio or visual signals).

h. Briefs signal(s) for formation changes.

i. Briefs equipment recovery plans.

j. Briefs emergency procedures such as equipment breakdowns.

k. Briefs fire support.

l. Briefs medical evacuation

m. Briefs safety concerns.

\*4. Leaders enforce dark adaptation procedures in accordance with (IAW) the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP).

5. Company conducts assigned mission during limited visibility conditions.

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

**Task Title**

- Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)
- Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)

## TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINE

**TASK:** Conduct Patrol Operations (Infantry Company) (07-2-1315)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is conducting operations as part of a larger force and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a patrol. The purpose of the patrol is specified by higher headquarters. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The company has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The company has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company conducts patrol operations in accordance with (IAW) tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and or higher commander's guidance. The company commander determines the purpose of the patrol. The company accomplishes the stated purpose of the patrol. The company maintains all-around security. The company complies with the rules of engagement ROE and or rules of interaction (ROI).

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO GO</b>
<p>* 1. Company leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using information that is gathered from maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources</p> <p>.</p> <p>* 2. Company commander receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) and issues warning order (WARNO) to the company using radio or other tactical means.</p> <p>* 3. Company commander confirms friendly and enemy situations.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Receives an updated report showing the location of forward and adjacent friendly elements, if applicable.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Receives an updated enemy situational template for added fratricide prevention and increased force protection, if applicable.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">c. Clarifies priority intelligence requirement (PIR) requirements.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">d. Confirms any changes to the company team and platoon task or purpose.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">e. Confirms any changes to the scheme of maneuver.</p> <p>* 4. Company commander plans using troop-leading procedures.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Conducts analysis based on factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC).</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(1) Considers the enemy's capabilities, likely courses of action (COAs), and specific weapons capabilities.</p>		

- b. Conducts a map reconnaissance.
  - (1) Marks objective rally point (ORP), if used.
  - (2) Marks rally points.
  - (3) Marks tentative security, support by fire, and assault positions, if applicable.
  - (4) Marks routes to and from the objective rally (ORP) and objective.
  - (5) Identifies likely enemy avenues of approach.
  - (6) Marks tentative dismount points on maps as appropriate.
- c. Determines purpose of patrol.
  - (1) Ambush.
  - (2) Raid.
  - (3) Security.
  - (4) Gain information.
  - (5) Confirm or disprove the accuracy of information previously gained.
- d. Plans for special equipment requirements.
- e. Coordinates with adjacent units, as required.
- f. Plans indirect fire support and or close air support, if available.
- g. Identifies direct fire responsibilities.
- h. Plans the integration of direct and indirect fires in accordance with (IAW) higher headquarters' fire support plan.
- i. Plans security for the company:
  - (1) At points along the route.
  - (2) At danger areas.
  - (3) At objective rally point (ORP).
  - (4) Along enemy avenues of approach into the objective.
- j. Organizes the company as necessary to accomplish the mission and or compensate for combat losses.
- k. Briefs company leaders on the specifics of the patrol.
- l. Assigns additional tasks, as required.
  - (1) Demolitions.
  - (2) Search of enemy killed and or captured.
  - (3) Guarding of enemy prisoners of war (EPWs).
  - (4) Treatment and evacuation (litter teams) of friendly casualties.
  - (5) Other, as required.
- m. Determines who will control any attachments of skilled personnel or special equipment.
- n. Coordinates passage of lines, if required.
- o. Coordinates and synchronizes activities within each battlefield operating system (BOS).
- p. Addresses actions on chance contact with the enemy.

\* 5. Company commander disseminates overlays, and other pertinent information to each platoon to keep them abreast of the situation.

\* 6. Company commander issues orders and instructions to include rule of engagement ROE and or rules of interaction (ROI).

- a. Issues clear and concise taskings to platoons and or elements.

7. Company conducts rehearsal.

8. Company departs for the objective rally point (ORP), if used.

- a. Departs from vehicles and or friendly positions in accordance with (IAW) the plan.
- b. Conducts passage of lines, if required.
- c. Conducts tactical movement to objective rally point (ORP) based on factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC).

- (1) Uses appropriate formations and techniques.

- (2) Conducts continuous surveillance and maintains 360 degree security during movement.

- (3) Maintains continuous communications (signal, or radio).

- (4) Establish security at the objective rally point (ORP).

- d. Conducts leader's reconnaissance of the objective, if required.

- (1) Designates a release point half way between the Objective rally point (ORP) and the objective where platoons and fire teams separate to move to their assigned positions.

- (2) Confirms the location of the objective.

- (3) Determines if the objective is suitable for the ambush or raid, if purpose of patrol is an ambush or raid.

- (4) Selects/confirms the type of formation to be used, if purpose of patrol is an ambush.

- (5) Analyze the terrain to determine where he can place mines or claymore(s) to cover dead space, if purpose of patrol is an ambush.

- (6) Confirms/validates the plan.

- (7) Does not cross the objective, if the objective will be the kill zone.

- (8) Selects assault, support, and security positions and routes from them back to the objective rally point (ORP), if purpose of patrol is an ambush.

- (9) Posts the surveillance team.

- (10) Identifies all required enemy activity based on priority intelligence requirements (PIR).

- (11) Sends timely, accurate reports as required using the size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment (SALUTE) format.

- e. Reconnaissance element returns to the objective rally point (ORP).

\* 9. Company commander coordinates/synchronizes actions of subordinate elements.

\* 10. Company commander uses fragmentary order (FRAGOs) as necessary to redirect actions of subordinate elements.

11. Company accomplishes the purpose of the patrol.

- a. Conducts an ambush or raid. (See task "Conduct an Ambush" or "Conduct a Raid")

- (1) Company moves tactically to assault, support, and security

<p>positions as required.</p> <p>(2) Destroys or captures enemy soldiers or equipment in accordance with (IAW) the order and commander's intent.</p> <p>(3) Destroys installations, facilities, or key points in accordance with (IAW) the order and commander's intent.</p> <p>(4) Harasses enemy forces in accordance with (IAW) the order and commander's intent.</p> <p>b. Conducts reconnaissance. (See task "Conduct an Area or Zone Reconnaissance" or "Conduct a Route Reconnaissance".)</p> <p>(1) Collects all critical information in accordance with (IAW) order and or commander's guidance.</p> <p>(2) Confirms or disproves the accuracy of information previously gained.</p> <p>12. Company consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.</p> <p>13. Company secures enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.</p> <p>14. Company treats and evacuates casualties.</p> <p>* 15. Company commander completes the patrol report.</p> <p>a. Conducts an after action review (AAR).</p> <p>(1) Debriefs patrol members.</p> <p>(2) Compiles reconnaissance information.</p> <p>b. Prepares patrol report.</p> <p>c. Reviews patrol report with patrol members for accuracy and completeness.</p> <p>d. Submits completed patrol report to higher headquarters.</p> <p>16. Company processes captured documents and or equipment as required.</p> <p>17. Company continues operations as directed.</p>		
---	--	--

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

## **SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

### **Task Title**

Conduct an Ambush (Infantry Company)  
Conduct Tactical Movement (Infantry Company)  
Report Tactical Information (Infantry Company)  
Integrate Direct Fires (Infantry Company)  
Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Infantry Company)  
Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Infantry Company)  
Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry Company)  
Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Antiarmor/Infantry Company)  
Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Company) army training and evaluation program (ARTEP)  
Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Infantry Company)  
Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Company)  
Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)  
Prepare for Combat (Infantry Company)  
Maintain Operations Security (Infantry Company)

## TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINE

**TASK:** Conduct Tactical Movement (Infantry Company) (07-2-1342)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is conducting operations as part of a larger force and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a mission at the location and time specified. The company must move tactically to prevent the enemy from detecting its activities or intent. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The company has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The company has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company conducts tactical movement in accordance with (IAW) tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, commander's guidance, and or the appropriate field manual. The company moves using the route or axis of advance, formations, and techniques of movement as specified or as dictated by factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time and civil considerations (METT-TC). The company maintains the appropriate interval and all around security during movement. The company complies with the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO GO</b>
<p>* 1. Company leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using information that is gathered from maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.</p> <p>* 2. Company commander receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) and issues warning order (WARNO) to the company using radio or other tactical means.</p> <p>* 3. Company commander plans using troop-leading procedures.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Conducts analysis based on factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC).</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(1) Considers the enemy's capabilities, likely courses of action (COAs), and specific weapons capabilities.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Conducts a map reconnaissance.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(1) Identifies routes that provide protection from direct and indirect fires.</p> <p style="padding-left: 60px;">(a) Offers concealment from ground and air</p> <p style="padding-left: 60px;">(b) Avoids skylining.</p> <p style="padding-left: 60px;">(c) Avoids moving directly forward from firing positions.</p> <p style="padding-left: 60px;">(d) Avoids danger areas and potential kill zones.</p> <p style="padding-left: 60px;">(e) Avoids obvious enemy avenues of approach.</p>		

- (2) Identifies coordination points, passage points, and boundaries.
- (3) Identifies adjacent units.
- (4) Identifies potential danger areas.
- (5) Plots waypoints on easily recognizable terrain and on significant turns on the route for ease in navigation.
- (6) Marks tentative dismount points on maps as appropriate.
- c. Develops control measures.
  - (1) Develops limited visibility marking to aid in command and control at night.
  - (2) Develops graphics, if not assigned by higher headquarters.
  - (3) Designates guides, if possible.
  - (4) Plans to use night vision devices and thermal devices, if available.
- d. Develops a movement plan.
  - (1) Selects a tentative formation based on factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time, and civil considerations (METT-TC). (Mounted and or dismounted)
  - (2) Coordinates formation with other elements moving in the main body formation, if using a different formation than the remainder of the higher headquarters.
  - (3) Selects the tentative movement technique based on factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC).
- e. Plans the use of dismounted infantry, if mounted, when any of the following conditions apply:
  - (1) Detailed reconnaissance is required.
  - (2) Stealth is required.
  - (3) Enemy contact is expected or visual contact has been made.
  - (4) Vehicle movement is restricted by terrain.
  - (5) Time is not limited.
  - (6) Security is the primary concern.
- f. Coordinates linkup with vehicles, if dismounted.
- g. Integrates indirect fire support for mounted and dismounted tactical movement.
- h. Identifies direct fire responsibilities.
- i. Organizes the company as necessary to accomplish the mission and or compensate for combat losses.
- j. Develops a security plan.
  - (1) Assigns each platoon a sector of responsibility. (They are responsible for their sector during movement and at the halt.)
- k. Coordinates passage of lines as necessary.
- l. Addresses actions on chance contact with the enemy.

\* 4. Company commander disseminates overlays, and other pertinent information to each squad to keep them abreast of the situation.

- \* 5. Company commander briefs the movement plan.
  - a. Specifies conditions under which the company will change movement techniques and or formations.
  - b. Designates bounding and overwatch elements based on mission,

enemy, terrain, troops, time and civil considerations (METT-TC).  
c. Briefs waypoints for checkpoints, boundaries, etc..  
d. Briefs signals and or radio commands used for command and control.

\* 6. Company commander issues orders and instructions to include rules of engagement ((ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).

a. Issues clear and concise taskings to platoons/elements.

7. Company conducts a rehearsal.

\* 8. Company commander and reconnaissance element conducts the reconnaissance [based on mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC).

\*9. Company commander adjust the plan based on updated intelligence and reconnaissance effort.

\* 10. Company commander disseminates updated overlays, and other pertinent information.

\* 11. Company commander or designated representative initiates movement to line of departure (LD).

a. Conducts passage of lines, if required.

\* 12. Company commander coordinates/synchronizes actions of subordinate elements.

\* 13. Company commander uses fragmentary order (FRAGOs) as necessary to redirect actions of subordinate elements.

14. Company moves using the following fundamentals:

a. Moves as squads and platoons.

b. Moves as fast as the situation allows.

c. Makes contact with the smallest element possible.

d. Positions weapons platoons, squads, or teams where they can provide responsive fires in the event of enemy contact (i.e. mortars).

15. Company moves using the appropriate formation as designated by the company commander.

a. Selects the formation that provides the proper control, security, and speed.

b. Uses MOUNTED formations based on factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC).

(1) Column formation: Used when speed is critical, when the company is moving through restricted terrain on a specific route, or when enemy contact is not likely.

(2) Wedge formation: Used when contact is possible or the enemy situation is unclear.

(3) Line formation: Used when assaulting a weakly defended objective, crossing open areas, or in a support-by-fire position.

- (4) Echelon formation: Used to maintain security and or observation of one flank when enemy contact is not likely.
- (5) Coil formation: Used to provide all-round security and observation when the company is stationary.
- (6) Herringbone formation: Used to disperse the company when traveling in column formation.

c. Uses DISMOUNTED formations based on factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC).

- (1) Column formation: (Primary company movement formation.)
- (2) Wedge formation: (Basic formation for the fire team.) Used when the enemy situation is vague, but contact is NOT expected.
- (3) Line formation: Used when the leader wants all soldiers forward for maximum fire power and the enemy situation is known.
- (4) Vee formation: Used when the enemy situation is vague, but contact IS expected from the front.
- (5) File formation.
  - (a) Used when the terrain precludes use of the wedge.
  - (b) Used when visibility is poor.
- (6) Echelon formation (right or left). Used if the situation is vague and enemy contact to the front or on one flank is likely.

d. Adjusts formation during limited visibility to maintain visibility between vehicles, individuals, teams, and squads, and to maintain the rate of movement.

16. Company executes movement technique as directed by the company commander.

a. Adjusts the movement technique to provide greater security, as the probability of enemy contact increases.

b. Employs traveling technique as ordered.

- (1) Assumes correct order of march as directed by the company commander.
- (2) Moves in a company column with 20 to 50 meters between platoons.

Note: Distance between platoons depends on visibility afforded by terrain, weather, and light.

- (a) All platoons use traveling and maintain adequate distance between squads and soldiers.
- (3) Maintains visual contact between lead and trail elements.
- (4) Maintains company integrity as much as possible and organizes the formation for ease of deployment during the upcoming mission.
- (5) Sustain areas of responsibility for observation and fire to ensure 360-degree security.

c. Employs traveling overwatch technique as ordered.

- (1) Moves in a company column or wedge.

Note: Distance between platoons is not fixed.

- (2) Positions a platoon as lead (bounding) and platoons as trail (overwatch).
  - (a) Lead platoon moves continuously.
  - (b) Trailing platoons stay far enough behind the lead

- platoon to avoid fire directed at the lead platoon.
- (c) Trailing platoons stay close enough so they can provide fire support or maneuver when the lead platoon makes contact.
- (d) Trailing platoons halt periodically at advantageous vantage points to provide overwatch and or base of fire for the lead platoon.
- (3) Individual vehicles use terrain driving techniques to reduce exposure.
- (4) Maintains command and control of the platoons using hand and arm signals or radio communications as the terrain allows.
- (5) Maintains 360 degree security.

d. Employs bounding overwatch technique as ordered.

Note: The Company commander designates the initial bounding and initial overwatch platoons and specifies either the alternate or successive bounding method.

- (1) Employs alternate bounds.
  - (a) Trailing platoon advances PAST the lead platoon to the next overwatch position. (This method is usually more rapid than successive bounds.)
  - (b) Repeats sequence of bounding past each other until the company halts, the movement technique is changed, or the company transitions to maneuver by conducting actions on contact.
- (2) Employs successive bounds.
  - (a) Trailing platoon moves to an overwatch position that is approximately ABREAST of the lead platoon. (This method is easier to control and more secure than alternate bounding, but it is slower.)
  - (b) Repeats sequence of bounding abreast each other until the company halts, the movement technique is changed, or the company transitions to maneuver on contact.

\* 17. Company commander positions himself where he can best control and execute the desired formation.

18. Company maintains formation with correct interval, speed, and or lateral Dispersion in accordance with (IAW) commander's guidance or tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP).

19. Company orients weapons/weapon systems to provide security and maximize firepower as necessary.

20. Company moves undetected to the designated point specified in the operation order (OPORD).

21. Company consolidates and reorganizes as necessary during and or after movement.

22. Company secures enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.

23. Company treats and evacuates casualties as appropriate.		
24. Company processes captured documents and or equipment as required.		
25. Company continues operations as directed.		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

**Task Title**

- Report Tactical Information (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Overwatch and or Support by Fire (Infantry Company)
- Integrate Direct Fires (Infantry Company)
- Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Infantry Company)
- Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)
- Prepare for Combat (Infantry Company)
- Maintain Operations Security (Infantry Company)

## TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINE

**TASK:** Conduct Tactical Movement in a Built-up Area (Infantry Company) (07-2-1351)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is conducting operations as part of a larger force and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a mission in a built-up area at the location and time specified. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The company has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The company has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company conducts tactical movement on in a built-up area in accordance with (IAW) tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, higher commander's guidance, and or platoon leaders direction. The company moves on the specified route using the appropriate formation and technique and arrives at the specified destination at the designated time. The company complies with the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO GO</b>
<p>* 1. Company leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using information that is gathered from maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.</p> <p>* 2. Company commander receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) and issues warning order (WARNO) to the company using radio or other tactical means.</p> <p>* 3. Company commander confirms friendly and enemy situations.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Receives an updated report showing the location of forward and adjacent friendly elements, if applicable.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Receives an updated enemy situational template for added fratricide prevention and increased force protection, if applicable.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">c. Confirms any changes to the company team and company task or purpose.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">d. Confirms any changes to the scheme of maneuver.</p> <p>* 4. Company commander plans using troop-leading procedures.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Conducts a map reconnaissance.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(1) Selects a route, if one is not provided by higher headquarters.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(2) Considers routes for dismounted elements that:</p> <p style="padding-left: 60px;">(a) Provides cover and concealment from ground and air observation and fires.</p>		

<p>(b) Avoids sky lining.  (c) Avoids moving directly forward from firing positions.  (d) Avoids open areas and potential kill zones.  (e) Avoids obvious avenues of approach.  (f) Do not mask friendly suppressive fires.  (g) Allows infiltration as a maneuver to place small teams into position.</p> <p>(3) Consider routes for mounted elements that:  (a) Provides cover and concealment from ground and air observation and fires.  (b) Avoids sky lining.  (c) Avoids moving directly forward from firing positions.  (d) Avoids open areas and potential kill zones.  (e) Avoids obvious avenues of approach.  (f) Do not mask friendly suppressive fires.</p> <p>b. Identifies direct fire responsibilities.  c. Plans the integration of direct and indirect fires in accordance with (IAW) higher headquarters' fire support plan.  (1) Includes smoke to cover movement, if necessary.  d. Develops control measures.  (1) Identifies and marks phase lines on the near side of streets.  (2) Uses numbering and or lettering systems for buildings.  (3) Identifies and marks no-fire areas.  e. Coordinates and synchronizes activities within each battlefield operating system (BOS).  f. Organizes the company as necessary to accomplish the mission and or compensate for combat losses.  g. Designates the movement technique to be used based on factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC).  (1) Traveling when enemy contact is not likely.  (2) Traveling overwatch when enemy contact is likely.  (3) Bounding overwatch when enemy contact is expected.</p> <p>Note: Normally, movement in a built-up area will be conducted dismounted or with dismounted elements in the lead.</p> <p>h. Designates the movement element and the overwatch element. (May be performed by commander or designated representative.)  i. Addresses actions on chance contact with the enemy.</p> <p>* 5. Company commander disseminates overlays, and other pertinent information to each element to keep them abreast of the situation.</p> <p>* 6. Company commander issues orders and instructions to include rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).  a. Issues clear and concise taskings to platoons and or elements.</p> <p>* 7. Company commander or designated representative prepares DISMOUNTED elements for tactical movement in a built-up area.  a. Reduces the overall load of dismounted elements, if possible, due to the extreme physical requirements of the urban battlefield.</p>		
--	--	--

8. Company conducts a rehearsal.

\* 9. Company commander issues a fragmentary order (FRAGO), as necessary, to address changes to the plan identified during the rehearsal.

\* 10. Company commander or designated representative and reconnaissance element conducts reconnaissance of the route, if time allows.

11. Company moves using the following guidelines.

- a. Moves only after defenders' fires have been suppressed or obscured, if applicable.
- b. Moves at night or during other periods of reduced visibility using night vision devices (NVDs).
- c. Moves using concealment of smoke provided by supporting vehicles or assets.

\* 12. Company commander uses fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) as necessary to redirect actions of subordinate elements.

\* 13. Company commander or designated representative directs DISMOUNTED movement in a built-up area.

- a. Reduces the overall load of dismounted elements, if possible, due to the extreme physical requirements of the urban battlefield.
- b. Ensures elements move on rooftops not covered by enemy direct fires.
- c. Ensures elements move on covered and concealed route(s), whenever possible.
- d. Ensures elements move along underground passages, through or behind buildings, and along walls.
- e. Ensures elements move in the streets, alleys, and other danger areas only when required by the situation.

(1) Elements move in single file along the side of the street, staying close to the buildings without "hugging" walls.

(2) Elements move quickly and members remain dispersed.

(3) Each soldier is assigned an area to observe so that there is observation in 360 degrees and in all dimensions.

(4) Elements use smoke, rubble, and debris for cover and concealment.

f. Ensures subordinate leaders rotate elements, during movement, as necessary.

g. Ensures company moves as two elements (movement element and overwatch element):

(1) Moves forward; reconnoiters danger areas; and closes with the enemy. (The movement element, if terrain is open as in a wide street.)

(2) Moves behind the lead element and secures the flanks and rear. [The overwatch element (the rest of the company and supporting weapons).]

Note: Elements moving by themselves or infiltrating may not have support elements.

h. Ensures elements cross urban danger areas using cover, concealment, speed, and overwatch.

Note: An element normally crosses as a dispersed group at the same time, but factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC) may cause the element leader to decide to cross in buddy teams or individually.

i. Ensures elements maintain all-around security.

(1) Clears buildings as necessary to continue movement.

(2) Identifies, reports, marks, and bypasses enemy obstacles, mines, and booby traps.

\* 14. Company commander or designated representative directs MOUNTED movement in a built-up area.

a. Ensures elements maintain close and continuous communications and or coordination with dismounted element leaders.

b. Ensures mounted elements follow dismounted elements that:

(1) Act as guides during limited visibility.

(2) Find, mark, breach, or find a bypass around antiarmor obstacles.

(3) Detect, suppress, or destroy enemy antiarmor positions.

(4) Designate targets for armored vehicles.

(5) Protect armored vehicles in close terrain.

c. Ensures mounted elements provide overwatch and fire support to dismounted elements.

15. Company consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.

16. Company secures enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.

17. Company treats and evacuates casualties as necessary.

18. Company processes captured documents and or equipment as required.

\*19. Company commander reports to higher headquarters as required using radio or other tactical means.

20. Company arrives at the specified location at the specified time.

21. Company continues operations as directed.

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

**Task Title**

- Conduct a Route Reconnaissance (Infantry Company)
- Reconnoiter a Built-up Area (Infantry Company)
- Report Tactical Information (Infantry Company)
- Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Infantry Company)
- Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Infantry Company)
- Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry Company)
- Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Antiarmor/Infantry Company)
- Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)
- Prepare for Combat (Infantry Company)
- Maintain Operations Security (Infantry Company)

## TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINE

**TASK:** Control Civil Disturbance Operations (Antiarmor/Infantry Company) (07-2-1360)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is conducting operations as part of a larger force and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to react to a civil disturbance in the area of operations. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The company has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The company has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company conducts civil disturbance operations in accordance with (IAW) tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and or higher commander's guidance. The company commander designates a quick reaction force (QRF). The company disperses, contains, or blocks the crowd using the minimum level of force necessary to control the situation. The company apprehends and detains leaders of the civil disturbance and other law violators, as the situation dictates. The company complies with the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO GO</b>
<p>* 1. Company leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using information that is gathered from maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.</p> <p>* 2. Company commander plans using troop leading procedures.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">a. Coordinates for all relevant information surrounding the disturbance.</p> <p>Note: The platoon leader's information requirements may include: previous civil disturbances and how they were handled, potential flash points (words or actions that will increase tension), key persons, potential weapons, numbers of personnel involved, tactics employed by similar crowds, crowd's issues and objectives.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">b. Determines specific constraints on use of force (for example, rules of engagement (ROE), or rules of interaction (ROI), mission instructions).</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">c. Conducts risk assessment for mission and force, (for example, estimated size of crowd, suspected weapons, extent of local support that crowd may have in comparison to unit capabilities).</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">d. Determines commander's critical information requirements (CCIR) and own intelligence priorities.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">e. Issues warning order to platoons and or company support sections and attached elements (for example combat camera teams,</p>		

Psychological Operations (PSYOP) team, Military Working Dog (MWD).

f. Describes the rules of engagement (ROE) and policy on use of force to unit personnel.

g. Ensures clear understanding of procedures to process captured equipment, weapons and or detainees.

3. Company headquarters determines external support requirements.

a. Coordinates for police assistance in apprehension and or detention of civilian personnel.

b. Coordinates for disposition of evidence.

c. Coordinates for support such as interpreters, special reaction team (SRT), hostage negotiators, Military Working Dogs (MWD) teams, Psychological Operations teams, Civil Affairs teams, Host Nations support, combat camera teams, and Public Affairs Officer (PAO).

d. Coordinates for special equipment (e.g., bullhorns, face shields, batons, and Class V [e.g., non-lethal munitions]).

\* 4. Company commander coordinates with the kandak special reaction team (SRT) commander. As a minimum the company commander coordinates the following.

a. Confirms special reaction team (SRT) radio frequency (ies), call sign(s), and recognition signals.

b. Identifies probable link-up points.

c. Confirms link-up procedures.

d. Confirms battle hand off procedures.

e. Confirms procedures for transfer of information.

\* 5. Company commander briefs platoon leaders and soldiers on rule of engagement (ROE) and or rule of interaction (ROI).

a. Reviews use of minimum force required to control the situation.

b. Identifies available non-lethal methods and capabilities.

c. States under what conditions deadly force is authorized.

d. States the importance of individual restraint and discipline in dealing with crowds.

e. Reviews procedures for medical evacuation of AFGAN and other personnel.

\* 6. Company commander and first sergeant (1SG) conduct and or supervise rehearsals.

a. Inspect soldiers with emphasis on civil disturbance equipment.

b. Verify leaders and soldiers understanding of rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).

c. Verify that soldiers understand how to respond to "overmatch" situations.

\* 7. Company commander supervises the civil disturbance operation.

a. Employs crowd control formations..

(1) Employs line formation.

(2) Employs wedge formation.

(3) Employs echelon formation.

<p>(4) Employs circle formation.</p> <p>(5) Employs diamond formation.</p> <p>b. Directs apprehension of instigators and other leaders of the disturbance as circumstances permit.</p> <p>c. Maintains discipline among soldiers.</p> <p>d. Apprehends leaders or instigators of the disturbance as the situation permits.</p> <p>e. Supervises and or directs use of weapons in accordance with (IAW) rules of engagement (ROE).</p> <p>f. Reacts to special threats (such as bombings, snipers, or hostage situations).</p> <p>g. Supervises the emplacement of barriers.</p> <p>h. Controls actions of special teams' psychological operation (PSYOP) teams, public affairs officers (PAO) teams, civilian affairs (CA) teams, military working dog (MWD) teams, combat camera teams and host nation support).</p> <p>i. Maintains communication with all elements to include the special reaction team (SRT).</p> <p>j. Provides timely, accurate situation reports (SITREPs) to higher headquarters.</p> <p>k. Maintains unit cohesion.</p> <p>l. Monitors the situation to include indications of whether or not the confrontation is escalating in terms of size or violence.</p> <p>m. Determines when the unit is in danger of being overmatched by the crowd.</p> <p>Note: A unit is overmatched when it can no longer maintain control over the situation due to the size or ferocity of the crowd or, the weapons being used.</p> <p>n. Calls for reinforcements.</p> <p>o. Directs link up with special reaction team (SRT).</p> <p>p. Employs the special reaction team (SRT) as part of the company or, responds to orders of special reaction team (SRT) commander, depending on decision of kandak commander.</p> <p>8. Company consolidates and reorganizes.</p> <p>a. Accounts for personnel and equipment.</p> <p>b. Treats and evacuates casualties.</p> <p>c. Reports in accordance with (IAW) orders and or tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP).</p> <p>9. Company secures detained persons as required.</p> <p>10. Company secures captured documents and confiscated equipment or weapons in accordance with (IAW) tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), order, and or guidance from higher headquarters.</p> <p>11. Company continues operations as directed.</p>		
--	--	--

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

"\*" indicates a leader task

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

**Task Title**

- Report Tactical Information (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)
- Report Tactical Information (Infantry Company)
- Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry Company)
- Secure Civilians During Operations (Antiarmor/Infantry Company)
- Conduct a Rehearsal (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)
- Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)
- Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Risk Management (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)
- Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)
- Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)
- Traverse a Built-up Area (Antiarmor/Infantry Company)

## TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINE

**TASK:** Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Company) (07-2-1387)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is conducting operations as part of a larger force and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to defend. The order requires the company commander to designate a reserve force. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The company has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The company has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company employs a reserve force in accordance with tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and or higher commander's guidance. The company commander designates the reserve force, gives them a "be prepared" mission, and commits the reserve at the decisive place and time. The company complies with the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of Interaction (ROI)

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO GO</b>
<p>* 1. Company leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using information that is gathered from maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.</p> <p>* 2. Company commander receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) and issues warning order (WARNO) to the company using radio or other tactical means.</p> <p>* 3. Company commander plans using troop-leading procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducts analysis based on factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC).</li> <li>b. Designates the main effort and supporting efforts.</li> <li>c. Plans and coordinates indirect fire and or close air support, if available.</li> <li>d. Identifies direct fire responsibilities.</li> <li>e. Plans and coordinates combat service support (CSS).</li> <li>f. Organizes the company as necessary to accomplish the mission and or compensate for combat losses.</li> <li>g. Address actions on chance contact with the enemy.</li> <li>h. Coordinates and synchronizes activities within each battlefield operating system (BOS).</li> <li>i. Considers enemy capabilities, likely courses of action (COAs), and specific weapons capabilities.</li> </ul>		

- |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|
| <p>* 4. Company commander disseminates overlays, and other pertinent information to each platoon to keep them abreast of the situation.</p> <p>* 5. Company commander issues orders and instructions to include rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).<br/> a. Provides reserve priorities for planning.<br/> Note: When the reserve does not include a platoon headquarters, the executive officer (XO) or first sergeant (1SG) may be designated as the reserve leader.</p> <p>6. Company conducts a rehearsal.</p> <p>* 7. Company commander issues a fragmentary order (FRAGO), as necessary, to address changes to the plan identified during the rehearsal.</p> <p>* 8. Company commander positions reserve force at a location where they can execute their mission in the priority that they were directed for planning.</p> <p>* 9. Company commander coordinates and or synchronizes actions of the reserve force and other company elements.</p> <p>*10. Company commander commits the reserve at the decisive place and time to:<br/> a. Exploit success.<br/> b. Reinforce or maintain the momentum.<br/> c. Deal with enemy counterattacks.<br/> d. Provide security.<br/> e. Preserve the commander's flexibility.<br/> f. Conduct counterattack.<br/> Note: When the reserve conducts the counterattack, it normally becomes the main effort and is given priority of fires.</p> <p>* 11. Company commander commits reserves for counterattack.<br/> a. Notifies higher headquarters commander immediately.<br/> b. Designates another reserve force.</p> <p>12. Reserve force conducts counterattack.<br/> a. Avoids friendly positions.<br/> b. Makes a quick decisive assault.<br/> c. Clears the penetrated area.</p> <p>13. Company consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.</p> <p>14. Company secures enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.</p> <p>15. Company treats and evacuates casualties.</p> <p>16. Company processes captured documents and or equipment as required.</p> |  |  |
|--|--|--|

17. Company continues operations as directed.		
---	--	--

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

**Task Title**

- Report Tactical Information (Infantry Company)
- Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Infantry Company)
- Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Infantry Company)
- Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry Company)
- Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Antiarmor/Infantry Company)
- Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)
- Maintain Operations Security (Infantry Company)

## TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINE

**TASK:** Establish a Base Camp (Infantry Company) (07-2-1405)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is conducting stability operations as part of a larger force and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to establish and occupy a base camp at the location and time specified. Engineer, intelligence, and other required combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) personnel and assets have been provided. Interpreters are provided. Environmental, construction, and restoration constraints have been provided by higher headquarters. The company provides its own security. All company personnel and equipment are available. The company has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The company has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of Interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company establishes and occupies the base camp in accordance with (IAW) tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and or higher commander's guidance. The company uses existing facilities if available and adequate. The company constructs facilities as necessary. The company establishes security measures to protect the force. The company complies with the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of Interaction (ROI) and other restrictions.

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO GO</b>
<p>* 1. Company leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using information that is gathered from maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p>* 2. Company commander receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) and issues warning order (WARNO) to the company using radio or other tactical means.</p> <p>* 3. Company commander confirms friendly and enemy situations.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Receives an updated report showing the location of forward and adjacent friendly elements, if applicable.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Receives an updated enemy situational template for added fratricide prevention and increased force protection, if applicable.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">c. Clarifies priority intelligence requirement (PIR) requirements.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">d. Confirms any changes to the higher headquarters and company task or purpose.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">e. Confirms any changes to the scheme of maneuver.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">f. Reviews higher headquarter's S2 intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) data.</p>		

- (1) Determines the nature, makeup and urban concentrations of local civil and or military population.
- (2) Determines the natural defensive characteristics of the terrain.
- (3) Determines conditions of existing roads, railways, pipelines, waterways, and other movement corridors for use as military lines of communications (LOCs) and local civil/military movement.
- (4) Determines proximity of threat to potential civil/military facilities and installations.

- \* 4. Company commander plans using troop-leading procedures.
- a. Conducts analysis based on factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC).
    - (1) Considers the potential enemy's capabilities, likely courses of action (COAs), and specific weapons capabilities.
  - b. Conducts a map reconnaissance.
    - (1) Identifies location of lodgment and surrounding area.
    - (2) Identifies tentative security positions.
    - (3) Identifies likely enemy avenues of approach.
    - (4) Marks tentative dismount points on maps as appropriate.
  - c. Plans lodgment that considers the following.
    - (1) Assignment of subunit sectors.
    - (2) Assignment of contiguous or noncontiguous areas of operations (AO).
    - (3) Other forces operating in the area.
    - (4) Composition, location, and size of lodgment.
    - (5) Location of the command post (CP).
    - (6) Distances from urban areas.
    - (7) Location of possible landing zones and pickup zones.
    - (8) Proximity to locations (LOCs).
    - (9) Priorities for protection of civil/military personnel, facilities, installations, and key terrain.
    - (10) Visibility of forces to establish force presence.
    - (11) Use of static and mobile security assets.
    - (12) Fire support.
    - (13) Continuous reconnaissance and security (R&S).
    - (14) Security measures.
    - (15) Availability of host nation support.
    - (16) Combat service support (CSS).
      - (a) Storage bunkers.
      - (b) Maintenance and refueling areas.
      - (c) Mess areas, showers, and latrines.
      - (d) Aid stations.
      - (e) Contracted services.
    - (17) Civil affairs and or civil military operations (CMO) activities.
    - (18) Assets required from kandak and higher.
  - d. Organizes the company as necessary to accomplish the mission and or compensate for combat losses.
    - (1) Designates a quartering party.
    - (2) Designates a reserve or quick reaction force (QRF) if

required.

e. Addresses actions on chance contact with the enemy.

f. Coordinates and synchronizes activities within each battlefield operating system (BOS).

\* 5. Company commander disseminates overlays, and other pertinent information to each element to keep them abreast of the situation.

\* 6. Company commander issues orders and instructions to include rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).

a. Issues clear and concise taskings to platoons and or elements.

b. Briefs quartering party.

7. Company conducts a rehearsal.

\* 8. Company commander issues a fragmentary order (FRAGO), as necessary, to address changes to the plan identified during the rehearsal.

9. Quartering party moves to lodgment area using appropriate movement method (tactical road march or tactical movement) (based on mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC).

a. Assists in and or conducts reconnaissance of route to lodgment area.

b. Posts guides along route and at entrance of lodgment as required.

c. Assists in and or conducts reconnaissance of lodgment area.

d. Secures lodgment area.

e. Conducts mine clearance as required.

f. Assists in/marks obstacles and mines.

g. Selects and marks tentative positions in accordance with (IAW) the order, tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), and or guidance.

h. Establish initial coordination with local residents if required.

i. Maintains surveillance and provides security of the area until the arrival of the remainder of the troop.

j. Reacts to contact as required.

k. Reports to main body when lodgment area is secure.

10. Main body moves to lodgment area using appropriate movement method (tactical road march or tactical movement) (based on mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC) factors).

a. Follows direction of guides if used.

b. Occupies lodgment.

(1) Uses existing facilities if available and adequate.

c. Reports arrival to higher headquarters as required.

d. Establishes security based on factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).

e. Reacts to contact as required.

f. Submits situation reports (SITREPs) to higher headquarters as required.

11. Company performs lodgment activities.

<p>a. Establishes command and control operations.  (1) Positions the command post (CP) in a location from which the commander can best lead his company.  (a) Considers communications requirements.  (b) Considers security needs for the command post (CP).  (2) Establishes company communications nets.</p> <p>b. Establishes and maintains a reserve force or quick reaction force (QRF) based on threat factors if not established before.</p> <p>c. Conducts defense of lodgment area.</p> <p>d. Conducts combat service support (CSS) activities.  (1) Starts construction of needed facilities.</p> <p>e. Improves positions as time permits.</p> <p>f. Conducts informal discussions with local residents utilizing combat intelligence/human intelligence (HUMINT) specialists.</p> <p>g. Takes measures to protect the force.  (1) Ensure equipment, personnel, and positions are camouflaged as required.  (2) Enforces light, noise, and litter discipline.  (3) Enforces proper radiotelephone procedures.  (4) Establishes checkpoints.  (5) Establishes and enforces effective lodgment area security procedures.  (6) Establishes observation posts (OPs) as required.  (7) Conducts aggressive patrolling.  (8) Conducts reconnaissance as necessary.</p> <p>h. Ensures all leaders and soldiers know how to deal effectively with broadcast and print reporters and photographers.</p> <p>i. Conducts negotiations required and or directed.</p> <p>j. Conducts presence operations required and or directed.</p> <p>k. Conducts civil disturbance operations required and or directed.</p> <p>l. Conducts compliance inspections as required and or directed.</p> <p>m. Reacts to terrorists and or insurgents as required.</p> <p>n. Conducts support operations as required and or directed.</p> <p>o. Secures civilians as required.</p> <p>p. Process captured documents and equipment as required.</p> <p>* 12. Company commander keeps the next higher commander informed of status of base camp area occupation and development.</p>		
--	--	--

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

---

“\*” indicates a leader task

## **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

### **SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

#### **Task Title**

Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Company) (Dismounted)  
Conduct Patrol Operations (Infantry Company)  
Conduct Security Operations in a Stability Environment (Antiarmor/Infantry Company)  
Conduct Tactical Movement (Infantry Company)  
Conduct Tactical Movement in a Built-up Area (Infantry Company)  
Control Civil Disturbance Operations (Antiarmor/Infantry Company)  
Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Company)  
Establish Checkpoints and or Roadblocks (Antiarmor/Infantry Company)  
Take Action on Contact (Infantry Company)  
Conduct a Route Reconnaissance (Infantry Company)  
Conduct an Area or Zone Reconnaissance (Infantry Company)  
Establish Observation Posts (Infantry Company)  
Reconnoiter a Built-up Area (Infantry Company)  
Report Tactical Information (Infantry Company)  
Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Infantry Company)  
Conduct Resupply Operations (Antiarmor/Infantry Company)  
Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry Company)  
Secure Civilians during Operations (Antiarmor/Infantry Company)  
Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Company)  
Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Company)  
Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Company)  
Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)  
Establish Communications (Infantry Company)  
Operate a Command Post (Antiarmor/Infantry Company)  
Prepare for Combat (Infantry Company)  
Employ Camouflage, Concealment, and Deception Techniques (Infantry Company)  
Maintain Operations Security (Infantry Company)

## TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINE

**TASK:** Establish Checkpoints and or Roadblocks (Antiarmor/Infantry Company) (07-2-1414)

**ITERATION:**     1   2   3   4   5     (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:**     T   P   U     (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is conducting operations as part of a larger force and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to establish checkpoints and or roadblocks at the locations specified. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. A quick reaction force (QRF) has been designated by higher headquarters. The company has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The company has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company establishes checkpoints and or roadblocks in accordance with (IAW) tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and or higher commander's guidance. The company commander assigns one platoon to each checkpoint. The position and orientation of barriers prevents passage or limits entry and exit by personnel and vehicles in, to, or from the specified area. The company complies with the rules of engagement rule of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO GO</b>
<p>* 1. Company leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using information that is gathered from maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p>*2. Company commander receives and operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) and issues warning order (WARNO) to the company using radio or other tactical means.</p> <p>* 3. Company commander confirms friendly and enemy situations.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Receives an updated report showing the location of forward and adjacent friendly elements, if applicable.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Receives an updated enemy situational template for added fratricide prevention and increased force protection, if applicable.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">c. Clarifies priority intelligence requirement (PIR) requirements.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">d. Confirms any changes to the higher headquarters and company task or purpose.</p> <p>* 4. Company commander plans using troop-leading procedures.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Conducts a map reconnaissance.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(1) Identifies general location of checkpoints and or roadblocks, if not assigned by higher headquarters.</p>		

- (2) Identifies likely avenues of approach.
- (3) Marks tentative dismount points on maps as appropriate.
- b. Confirms the purpose of the checkpoints and or roadblocks.
- c. Confirms whether the checkpoints and or roadblocks will be deliberate or hasty.
- d. Identifies force requirements to execute the mission.
  - (1) Requests civil police or female military police (MP) support to conduct female searches.
  - (2) Requests additional assets required to establish and operate the checkpoint and or roadblock, e.g. engineer support, military working dog (MWD) team, light sets, etc.
- e. Plans and coordinates indirect fire support, if required. (e.g., illumination).
- f. Identifies direct fire responsibilities, if applicable.
- g. Ensures checkpoints and or roadblocks are covered by fire.
- h. Ensures company is organized to accomplish the mission and or compensate for combat losses.
  - (1) Includes vehicle search teams.
  - (2) Includes personnel search teams (both female and male).
    - (a) Uses civil authorities or female soldiers for female search.
    - (b) Ensures soldiers are aware of special search requirements in accordance with (IAW) local culture and customs (females, clergy, etc.).

\* 5. Company commander coordinates details of quick reaction force (QRF) employment with the quick reaction force (QRF) commander.

- a. Briefs platoon leaders on details.

\* 6. Company commander disseminates overlays, and other pertinent information to each platoon to keep them abreast of the situation.

\* 7. Company commander issues orders and instructions to include rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).

- a. Issues clear and concise taskings to platoons and or elements.

\* 8. Company commander and or first sergeant supervise subordinate element rehearsals.

- a. Reviews specific limitations on use of lethal force to stop a vehicle or pedestrian who does not respond to instructions to stop.
- b. Practices vehicle and personnel searches.
- c. Practices questioning techniques.
- d. Practices the inspection of documents.
  - (1) Required documents are present.
  - (2) Documents are current and appropriate for the area of operations (AO).
  - (3) Documents are not counterfeit.
- e. Practices apprehension and detention of civilian personnel in accordance with (IAW) rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI).
- f. Practices processing contraband.

- \* 9. Company commander or designated representative conducts reconnaissance, time permitting.
  - a. Pinpoints checkpoint and or roadblock locations.
    - (1) Ensures checkpoints and or roadblocks cannot be seen from more than a short distance away to prevent drivers from avoiding it.

Note: Ideal locations include tunnels, culverts, bridges, and sharp bends or dips in a road.

- (2) Ensures the existence of checkpoints and or roadblocks will not present such a surprise that drivers cannot stop safely.

- b. Establishes security at checkpoints and or roadblocks, if required.
- c. Verifies and updates intelligence information.
- d. Leaves a surveillance team to observe checkpoints and or roadblocks, if required.
- e. Returns to the company position.

\* 10. Company commander adjusts the plan based on updated intelligence and reconnaissance effort.

\* 11. Company commander disseminates updated overlays, and other pertinent information.

12. Company elements execute checkpoint operations. (See platoon task: Establish and Operate a Checkpoint.)

- \* 13. Company commander or designated representative supervises checkpoint and or roadblock operations.
  - a. Enforces the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).
    - (1) Ensures politeness and respectful treatment of individuals is shown at all times.
  - b. Ensures shifts for 24 hour operations are established.
  - c. Reviews requirements for correct documentation to pass through the checkpoint.
  - d. Maintains communications with higher headquarters and the quick reaction force (QRF).
  - e. Requests quick reaction force (QRF), if required.
  - f. Employs the quick reaction force (QRF) as part of the company or responds to orders of quick reaction force (QRF) commander, depending on decision of the higher commander.
  - g. Reports to higher headquarters as required.
  - h. Prepares for future operations.

14. Company consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.

15. Company secures enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.

16. Company treats and evacuates casualties.

17. Company processes captured documents and or equipment as required.

18. Company continues operations as directed.		
---	--	--

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

**Task Title**

- Conduct a Reconnaissance (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)
- Conduct an Area or Zone Reconnaissance (Infantry Company)
- Reconnoiter a Built-up Area (Infantry Company)
- Report Tactical Information (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)
- Report Tactical Information (Infantry Company)
- Employ Fire Support (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)
- Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Infantry Company)
- Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)
- Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry Company)
- Secure Civilians during Operations (Antiarmor/Infantry Company)
- Conduct a Rehearsal (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)
- Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)
- Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Risk Management (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)
- Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Troop-leading Procedures Antiarmor Company/Platoon)
- Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)
- Prepare for Combat (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)
- Prepare for Combat (Infantry Company)
- Maintain Operations Security (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)
- Maintain Operations Security (Infantry Company)

## TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINE

**TASK:** React to Snipers (Infantry Company) (07-2-1432)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is conducting operations as part of a larger force and receives fire from an enemy sniper. The company must react immediately for their protection. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The company has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The company has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company reacts to the sniper in accordance with (IAW) tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and or higher commander's guidance. The company correctly locates and then bypasses, eliminates, or forces the withdrawal of the enemy sniper while disengaging the element in the kill zone. The company complies with the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO GO</b>
<p>* 1. Company leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using information that is gathered from maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.</p> <p>2. Elements being engaged conduct actions on contact (sniper fire).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Return fire immediately to destroy or suppress the enemy.</li> <li>b. Deploy to covered and concealed positions, if available.</li> <li>c. Utilize indirect fire assets, if available.</li> <li>d. Conduct battle drills, as necessary.</li> <li>e. Maintain visual contact with the enemy while continuing to develop the situation through reconnaissance or surveillance.</li> <li>f. Maintain cross talk with all company elements using radio or other tactical means.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. Company commander evaluates the situation and develops a course of action.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reports contact to higher headquarters using radio or other tactical means.</li> <li>b. Coordinates and synchronizes actions of subordinate elements.</li> <li>c. Uses fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) as necessary to redirect actions of subordinate elements.</li> <li>d. Bypasses the sniper.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The company uses smoke to obscure the enemy sniper's view.</li> <li>(2) The company uses available fires to suppress the sniper.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

<p>(3) The company uses maneuver to break contact with the sniper.</p> <p>Note. The company commander may choose to call for indirect fire on the sniper position.</p> <p>e. Eliminates the sniper.</p> <p>(1) Complies with the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).</p> <p>(2) The company uses smoke to obscure the enemy sniper's view.</p> <p>(3) The company uses available firepower to suppress and fix the sniper.</p> <p>(4) The company uses maneuver to close with the sniper and eliminate or force him to withdraw.</p> <p>4. Company consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.</p> <p>5. Company treats and evacuates casualties as necessary.</p> <p>6. Company secures enemy prisoners of war (EPW), if applicable</p> <p>7. Company processes captured documents and or equipment, if applicable.</p> <p>* 8. Company commander reports to higher headquarters as required using radio or other tactical means.</p> <p>9. Company continues operations as directed.</p>		
--	--	--

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

**Task Title**

- Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Company)
- Take Action on Contact (Infantry Company)
- Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Infantry Company)
- Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Antiarmor/Infantry Company)
- Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Infantry Company)

## **SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS Cont'd**

### **Task Title**

Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)

Maintain Operations Security (Infantry Company)

## TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINE

**TASK:** Secure Routes (Infantry Company) (07-2-1450)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is conducting operations as part of a larger force and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to secure one or more routes. The start point(s) and release point(s) is and or are specified. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. Engineer support is available. The company has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The company has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rule of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company secures the route(s) in accordance with (IAW) tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and or higher commander's guidance. The company clears and secures the route, and marks the route and or provides guides. The company complies with the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO GO</b>
<p>* 1. Company leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using information that is gathered from maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.</p> <p>* 2. Company commander receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) and issues warning order (WARNO) to the company using radio or other tactical means.</p> <p>* 3. Company commander plans using troop-leading procedures.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Conducts analysis based on factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC).</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(1) Considers the enemy's capabilities, likely courses of action (COAs), and specific weapons capabilities.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Conducts a map reconnaissance.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(1) Identifies the route(s), critical points, checkpoints, and control measures.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(2) Identifies tentative rally points.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(3) Identifies tentative security and support by fire.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(4) Identifies likely enemy avenues of approach.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(5) Identifies route(s)s to and from rally points.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(6) Identifies tentative observation post location(s).</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(7) Marks tentative dismount points on maps as appropriate.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(8) Identifies choke points that canalize movement.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(9) Identifies potential danger areas.</p>		

(10) Identifies possible by pass for danger areas, obstacles, and or choke points.

(11) Determines locations of bridges.

(12) Determines classification of bridges, if possible.

c. Plans and coordinates indirect fire support and or close air support, if available.

d. Identifies direct fire responsibilities.

e. Designates control measures such as checkpoints.

f. Identifies communication requirements.

g. Coordinates and synchronizes activities within each battlefield operating system (BOS).

h. Organizes the company as necessary to accomplish the mission and or compensate for combat losses.

i. Addresses actions on chance contact with the enemy.

j. Plans and coordinates combat service support (CSS).

\* 4. Company commander coordinates with the quick reaction force (QRF) commander/leader, if applicable.

a. Confirms quick reaction force (QRF) radio frequency (ies), call sign(s), and recognition signals.

b. Identifies probable linkup points.

c. Confirms linkup procedures.

d. Confirms battle hand off procedures.

e. Confirms procedures for transfer of information.

f. Addresses company actions on encountering.

(1) Belligerent forces and or persons

(2) Mines and booby-traps.

(3) Snipers.

(4) Roadblocks.

\* 5. Company commander issues orders and instructions to include rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).

a. Issues clear and concise taskings to platoons/elements.

6. Company conducts a rehearsal.

\* 7. Company commander issues fragmentary orders (FRAGOs), as necessary, to address changes to the plan identified during the rehearsal.

\* 8. Company commander or designated representative and reconnaissance element conducts the reconnaissance based on factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC).

a. Pinpoints the route(s), critical points, checkpoints, and rally points.

b. Verifies and updates intelligence information.

c. Leaves a surveillance team to observe the route(s) and critical points as required.

d. Returns to company position.

\* 9. Company commander adjust the plan based on updated intelligence and reconnaissance effort.

- |   |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 10. Company commander updates the enemy situation.</li> <li>11. Company moves to start point (SP).</li> <li>12. Company elements conduct route(s) security operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provide a route(s) overlay or detailed sketch to higher headquarters, convoys, and escorts, if used.</li> <li>b. Secure critical and or dominant terrain.</li> <li>c. Establish surveillance of the route(s). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Occupies observation posts (OPs) with clear fields of observation.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Mark and or clears the route(s) of mines and booby-traps within their capability.</li> <li>e. Repair bridges and prepares fords and bypasses within their capability.</li> <li>f. Mark the route(s) and or provide guides at bypasses and or detours along the route(s), as required.</li> <li>g. Patrol the designated route(s).</li> <li>h. Send situation reports (SITREPs) using the size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment (SALUTE) format.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 13. Company commander supervises route(s) security operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures element leaders and escorts report control measures as directed by the operation order (OPORD) or tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP).</li> <li>b. Maintains communications with elements, observation posts (Ops), security patrols, quick reaction force (QRF), and higher headquarters.</li> <li>c. Monitors convoys in transit along the route(s).</li> <li>d. Maintains routine civilian traffic flow.</li> <li>e. Reacts to attempts to interdict route(s) in accordance with (IAW) the rules of engagement (ROE), order, and or guidance from higher headquarters. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Employs platoons to defeat enemy forces.</li> <li>(2) Requests quick reaction force (QRF) support, if available.</li> <li>(3) Employs other elements such as Army aviation, if available.</li> </ul> </li> <li>f. Employs the quick reaction force (QRF) as part of the company or, responds to orders of QRF commander, depending on decision of the company commander.</li> <li>g. Submits reports in accordance with (IAW) the operation order (OPORD) and unit standing operating procedures (SOP).</li> <li>h. Uses fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) as necessary to redirect actions of subordinate elements.</li> </ul> </li> <li>14. Company consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.</li> <li>15. Company secures enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.</li> <li>16. Company treats and evacuates casualties.</li> <li>17. Company processes captured documents and or equipment as required.</li> </ul> |  |  |
|---|--|--|

18. Company continues operations as directed.		
---	--	--

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

**Task Title**

- Conduct Tactical Movement (Infantry Company)
- Conduct an Area or Zone Reconnaissance (Infantry Company)
- Report Tactical Information (Infantry Company)
- Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Resupply Operations (Antiarmor/Infantry Company)
- Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Infantry Company)
- Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry Company)
- Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Antiarmor/Infantry Company)
- Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)
- Prepare for Combat (Infantry Company)
- Maintain Operations Security (Infantry Company)

## TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINE

**TASK:** Take Action on Contact (Infantry Company) (07-2-1468)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is conducting operations as part of a larger force and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a mission at the location and time specified. The company makes unexpected contact with the enemy. The company receives fires from enemy weapons, visually acquires the enemy, or makes contact with an enemy obstacle. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The company has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The company has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rule of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company takes action on contact in accordance with tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, higher commander's guidance, and or the tactical situation. The element in contact deploys and reports, initiates fires to destroy or suppress the enemy, conducts necessary battles drills, and maneuvers to bypass, withdraw, or assault the enemy position. The company complies with the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO GO</b>
<p>* 1. Company leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using information that is gathered from maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.</p> <p>2. Company deploys and reports.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Reacts when contact entails direct fire.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(1) Returns fire immediately to destroy or suppress the enemy.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(2) Deploys to covered and concealed positions if available.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(3) Closes hatches if applicable.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(4) Utilizes indirect fire assets, as necessary.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(5) Conducts battle drills, as necessary.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(6) Maintains visual contact with the enemy while continuing to develop the situation through reconnaissance or surveillance.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(7) Maintains cross talk with all company elements using radio or other tactical means.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Reacts to visual contact. (element is in immediate danger.)</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(1) Initiates fires to destroy or suppress the enemy.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(2) Deploys to covered and concealed positions.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(3) Closes hatches, if applicable.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(4) Maintains cross talk with all company elements using radio or other tactical means.</p>		

(5) Conducts further actions as directed by the company commander.

c. Reacts to visual contact. (element is NOT in immediate danger.)

(1) Deploys.

(2) Maintains visual contact.

(3) Maintains cross talk with all company elements using radio or other tactical means.

(4) Conducts further actions as directed by the company commander.

(a) May include bypass of enemy position.

d. Reacts when contact is indirect fires (observed or receiving).

(1) Uses evasive actions to avoid impact area.

(2) Moves quickly to clear impact area.

(3) Closes hatches if applicable.

(4) Maintains cross talk with all company elements using radio or other tactical means.

(5) Conduct further actions as directed by the company commander.

e. Reacts when contact is with an obstacle.

(1) Deploys to covered and concealed positions.

(2) Maintains cross talk with all company elements using radio or other tactical means.

(3) Calls for immediate smoke on the far side of the obstacle to conceal deployment of the company, if required.

(4) Makes a recommendation to higher headquarters. (bypass or breach.)

(a) Bypasses if possible.

(b) Breaches if required.

f. Reacts to visual contact of enemy or unknown aircraft. (element is in immediate danger.)

(1) Initiates fires to destroy or cause aircraft to depart area.

(2) Deploys to covered and concealed positions.

(3) Closes hatches, if applicable.

(4) Activates on board self protection measures as appropriate.

(5) Maintains cross talk with all company elements using radio or other tactical means.

(6) Conduct further actions as directed by the company commander.

g. Reacts to visual contact of enemy or unknown aircraft. (element is NOT in immediate danger.)

(1) Deploys to covered and concealed positions.

(2) Maintains visual contact.

(3) Maintains cross talk with all company elements using radio or other tactical means.

(4) Conduct further actions as directed by the company commander.

3. Company complies with rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).

\* 4. Company commander evaluates the situation.

- a. Confirms friendly and enemy situations.
  - (1) Receives an updated enemy situational template for added fratricide prevention and increased force protection if applicable.
- b. Conducts reconnaissance to fully develop the situation.
- c. Determines enemy size, composition, activity, orientation, and location of weapon systems.
- d. Searches for antitank ditches, minefields, wire, or other obstacles that could define an engagement area.
- e. Searches for the flanks of the enemy and any elements that could mutually support enemy position(s).
- f. Analyzes platoon spot reports (SPOTREPs) and other tactical information as required to make an assessment of the situation.
- g. Sends updated spot reports (SPOTREPs) to higher headquarters based on a fully developed situation using radio or other tactical means.
- h. Directs the actions of elements not in contact in a manner that supports the elements in contact.
- i. Directs elements not in contact to continue the mission in accordance with (IAW) the operation order (OPORD) and or fragmentary order (FRAGO).

\* 5. Company commander disseminates overlays, and other pertinent information to each platoon to keep them abreast of the situation.

\* 6. Company commander selects an appropriate course of action based on the commander's intent, factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC), his analysis of the situation, and input from elements in contact.

- a. Directs the company to execute the original course of action (as previously addressed in the operation order (OPORD) if it is consistent with the commander's intent/concept and is within the company's capability.

OR

- b. Issues fragmentary order (FRAGO) to refine the plan based on the situation, ensuring it supports the commander's intent using radio or other tactical means.

OR

- c. Directs the company to execute tactical movement (employing bounding overwatch and support by fire within the company) and reconnaissance by fire to further develop the situation using radio, or other tactical means.

OR

- d. Directs the company to establish a hasty defense/support by fire (SBF) position and takes further guidance from commander using radio or other tactical means.

OR

- e. Chooses an alternative course of action (COA) based on evaluation and development of the situation.

\* 7. Company commander recommends alternative course of action (COA) (if situation dictates a change to the original plan).

- a. Sends recommendation to the higher headquarters commander using radio, or other tactical means.
- b. Receives orders to execute the course of action (COA) selected by the higher headquarters commander through radio or other tactical means.
- c. Uses cross talk with other companies as necessary to obtain support (company commander or designated representative) using radio or other tactical means.

\* 8. Company commander directs the company to execute the course of action (COA) based on the situation or commanders order using radio or other tactical means.

- a. Directs the company to destroy an inferior force.  
OR
- b. Directs company to conduct overwatch and or support by fire.  
OR
- c. Directs company to conduct an attack by fire.  
OR
- d. Directs company to assault an enemy position.  
OR
- e. Directs company to break contact and conduct bypass operations.  
OR
- f. Directs company to conduct reconnaissance by fire.  
OR
- g. Directs company to conduct defense of a battle position.  
OR
- h. Directs company to breach an obstacle.

\* 9. Company commander or designated representative keeps the higher command informed throughout the operation using radio or other tactical means.

- a. Sends updated situation reports (SITREPs) and or spot reports (SPOTREPs) as necessary.
- b. Reports completion of the operation.

10. Company consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.

11. Company handles enemy prisoners of war (EPW) if applicable.

12. Company treats and evacuates casualties if applicable.

13. Company processes captured documents and or equipment if applicable.

14. Company continues operations as directed.

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

**Task Title**

- Employ Obstacle(s) (Infantry Company)
- Report Tactical Information (Infantry Company)
- Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Infantry Company)
- Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Infantry Company)
- Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry Company)
- Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Antiarmor/Infantry Company)
- Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)
- Prepare for Combat (Infantry Company)

## TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINE

**TASK:** Breach an Obstacle (Infantry Company) (07-2-1477)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is conducting operations as part of a larger force and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order FRAGO) to immediately breach an obstacle that cannot be bypassed. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The company has indirect fire support available. The company has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The company has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company breaches the obstacle in accordance with (IAW) tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The company breaches the obstacle using the fundamentals of suppress, obscure, secure, reduce, and assault (SOSRA). The company provides security (near and far side), reduces the obstacle, marks lanes, and passes through the obstacle. The company complies with the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO GO</b>
<p>* 1. Company leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using information that is gathered from maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.</p> <p>* 2. Company commander receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) and issues warning order (WARNO) to the company using radio or other tactical means.</p> <p>* 3. Company commander conducts troop-leading procedures with emphasis on the following.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Confirms friendly and enemy situations.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Receives an updated report showing the location of forward and adjacent friendly elements, if applicable.</li> <li>(2) Receives an updated enemy situational template for added fratricide prevention and increased force protection, if applicable.</li> <li>(3) Confirms any changes to the company team and company task or purpose.</li> <li>(4) Confirms any changes to the scheme of maneuver.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Plans, integrates, and coordinates indirect fire support and or close air support, if available.</li> <li>c. Identifies direct fire responsibilities.</li> <li>d. Identifies dismount point(s), if applicable.</li> <li>e. Coordinates and synchronizes activities within each battlefield</li> </ul>		

operating system (BOS).

f. Considers the enemy's capabilities, likely course of actions (COAs), and specific weapons capabilities.

g. Organizes the company as necessary to accomplish the mission and or compensate for combat losses.

(1) Designates a support, assault, and breach element.

h. Addresses actions on chance contact with the enemy.

i. Disseminates reports and overlays to each subordinate element to keep them abreast of the situation.

j. Company commander develops a course of action (COA) using suppress, observe, secure, reduce, and assault (SOSRA).

(1) Considers suppress.

(a) Identifies the support element's axis of advance to support by fire (SBF) positions.

(b) Establishes SBF positions that will allow the support element to fire simultaneously from different directions.

(c) Establishes target reference points (TRPs) to control the support and breach elements' direct fires.

(d) Plans essential indirect fire targets to assist in suppressing the enemy.

(e) Develops a plan for lifting and shifting fires.

(2) Considers obscure.

(a) Determines the location of smoke targets.

(b) Identifies terrain features that mask the company's point of breach and limit the number of enemy forces that can effectively observe and fire on the breach element.

(c) Considers conducting the breach during limited visibility conditions, such as fog or darkness.

(d) Determines smoke requirements.

(3) Considers secure.

(a) Plans direct fire control measures as necessary.

(b) Uses terrain and the positioning of near-side and far-side security SBF near the point of breach to facilitate the survivability of the breach element.

(c) Plans local security at the breach site to suppress overwatching enemy forces that are close to the obstacle.

(4) Considers reduce.

(a) Identifies primary and alternate reduction technique, such as explosive, mechanical, electronic, and manual.

(b) Determines tentative location of lane(s) and the separation between the lanes, if applicable.

(c) Identifies tentative positions and routes for the breach element as it maneuvers toward the obstacle.

(5) Considers assault.

(a) Develops objectives for the assault element.

(b) Identifies SBF positions to be occupied by the assault element to facilitate passage of follow on elements.

(c) Plans direct and indirect fire control measures that support the seizure of the far-side objective(s).

\* 4. Company commander request additional resources, as required, using

radio or other tactical means.

\* 5. Company commander issues orders and instructions to include rule of engagement (ROE) and or rule of interaction (ROI).

a. Issues clear and concise taskings to platoons.

6. Company conducts a rehearsal.

\* 7. Company commander issues a fragmentary order (FRAGO), as necessary, to address changes to the plan identified during the rehearsal.

\* 8. Company commander or his designated representative positions support, assault, and breach elements.

a. Moves along covered and concealed routes, using appropriate technique of movement and formation based on the enemy situation.

\* 9. Company commander ensures synchronization of that suppression and obscuration are synchronized with reduction and assault.

\* 10. Company commander coordinates and or synchronizes actions of the support, assault, and breach elements.

\* 11. Company commander uses fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) as necessary to redirect actions of subordinate elements.

12. Support element supports the breach.

a. Suppresses enemy elements capable of placing direct fires on the point of breach.

b. Suppresses enemy elements capable of placing direct fires on the assault element.

c. Calls for and adjust indirect fires, including obscuration.

d. Fixes enemy elements that are capable of repositioning.

13. Breach element conducts the breach. Reduces lane (s) in the obstacle.

a. Provides local security (far-side and near-side).

b. Provides additional suppression of enemy elements over watching the obstacle.

c. Marks the location of created lane(s).

d. Reports the location of created lanes using radio or other tactical means.

e. Assists the passage of the assault force through created lane(s).

14. Assault element assaults through the obstacle.

a. Seizes the far-side objective, if required.

b. Reduces protective obstacles, if required.

c. Prevents enemy direct fire from interfering with follow on elements as they pass through the lane(s).

d. Provides clear routes to the battle hand-over line (BHL) for follow on elements, if applicable.

e. Conducts battle hand-over with follow on forces, if applicable.

<p>* 15. Company commander reports completion of the breach to higher headquarters using radio, or other tactical means.</p> <p>16. Company consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.</p> <p>17. Company secures enemy prisoners of war (EPW), if applicable.</p> <p>18. Company treats and evacuates casualties as required.</p> <p>19. Company processes captured documents and or equipment, if applicable.</p> <p>20. Company continues operations as ordered.</p>		
---	--	--

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

### **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

**Task Title**

- LOCATE MINES BY VISUAL MEANS
- Engage Targets with an RPK Machine Gun
- Load a PKM Machine Gun
- Engage Targets with a PKM Machine Gun
- Perform a Function Check on a GP-30 Grenade Launcher
- Correct Malfunctions of a GP-30 Grenade Launcher
- Engage Targets with a GP-30 Grenade Launcher
- Load an RPK Machine Gun
- Move as a Member of a Fire Team
- Estimate Range
- Plan for Use of Supporting Fires STP 7
- Conduct the Maneuver of a Platoon

### **SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

**Task Title**

- Conduct Tactical Movement (Infantry Company)
- Report Tactical Information (Infantry Company)
- Integrate Direct Fires (Infantry Company)
- Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Infantry Company)
- Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Infantry Company)
- Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry Company)

## **SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS Cont'd**

### **Task Title**

Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Antiarmor/Infantry Company)  
Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Company)  
Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Infantry Company)  
Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Company)  
Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)  
Prepare for Combat (Infantry Company)  
Maintain Operations Security (Infantry Company)

## TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINE

**TASK:** Integrate Direct Fires (Infantry Company) (07-2-3027)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is conducting operations as part of a larger force and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a mission requiring the company commander to conduct direct fires planning and employment. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The company has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The company has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rule of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company plans and integrates direct fires in accordance with (IAW) tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, higher commander's guidance, and current doctrine. The company commander plans to mass and distribute direct fires that will accomplish the intent of the higher commander, avoid target overkill, minimize friendly exposure, and prevent fratricide. The company commander employs the appropriate weapon for the type of target engaged. The company complies with the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO GO</b>
<p>* 1. Company leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using information that is gathered from maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p>* 2. Company commander confirms friendly and enemy situations.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Receives an updated I report showing the location of forward and adjacent friendly elements, if applicable.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Receives an updated enemy situational template for added fratricide prevention and increased force protection, if applicable.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">c. Clarifies priority intelligence requirement (PIR) requirements.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">d. Confirms any changes to the higher headquarters and company task or purpose.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">e. Confirms any changes to the scheme of maneuver.</p> <p>* 3. Company commander plans using troop-leading procedures.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Conducts analysis based on factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC).</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(1) Considers the enemy's capabilities, likely courses of action (COAs), and specific weapons capabilities.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Conducts a map reconnaissance.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(1) Identifies tentative target reference points (TRPs).</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(2) Identifies tentative engagement areas (EAs).</p>		

- (3) Identify probable or known enemy locations.
- (4) Identifies tentative company positions.
- (5) Identifies tentative sectors of fires for company elements.
- (6) Identifies tentative dismount point(s).
- c. Designates the main effort and supporting effort.
- d. Determines desired effect on the enemy (suppress, isolate, obscure, neutralize, destroy, deceive, or disrupt).
- e. Identifies priority targets.
- f. Identifies ammunition restrictions and controlled supply rate.
- g. Develops graphical fires control measures.
  - (1) Determines control measures to initiate fires, lift fires, and shift fires.
  - (2) Determines control measures to adjust direct fires based on the latest available situation awareness (SA) information.
- h. Plans for extreme limited visibility conditions.
- i. Integrates direct fires and indirect fires to support maneuver throughout the operation.
- j. Addresses means for focusing fires, distributing their effects, orienting forces, and preventing fratricide, if not covered in the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP).
- k. Sets and adjusts the weapons control status based on friendly and enemy disposition and situational understanding, if not provided by higher headquarters.
- l. Determines engagement techniques.
  - (1) Point fires.
  - (2) Area fires.
  - (3) Alternating fires.
  - (4) Sequential fires.
  - (5) Simultaneous fires.
  - (6) Observed fires.
  - (7) Time of suppression.
  - (8) Reconnaissance by fires.
- m. Plans fires to support all phases of the operation.
- n. Plans fires on all likely or known enemy positions within direct fires range.
- o. Plans and coordinates combat service support (CSS).
- p. Coordinates and synchronizes activities within each battlefield operating system (BOS).
- q. Organizes the company as necessary to accomplish the mission and or compensate for combat losses.
  - (1) Designates a reserve, if required.
- r. Addresses actions on chance contact with the enemy.

\* 4. Company commander disseminates overlays, and other pertinent information to each element to keep them abreast of the situation.

\* 5. Company commander issues orders and instructions to include rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interactions (ROI).

- a. Issues clear and concise taskings to platoons and or elements.

6. Company conducts a rehearsal.

<p>a. Rehearses direct fires plan during the day and at night, if possible.</p> <p>* 7. Company commander issues a fragmentary order (FRAGO), as necessary, to address changes to the plan identified during the rehearsal.</p> <p>* 8. Company commander or designated representative and reconnaissance element conducts the reconnaissance based on factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC).</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Confirms target reference points (TRPs).</li> <li>b. Confirms engagement area(s).</li> <li>c. Verifies and updates intelligence information, if possible.</li> <li>d. Secures battle, security, and or assault positions, if applicable.</li> <li>e. Leaves security at battle, security, and or assault positions, if applicable.</li> <li>f. Returns to company position.</li> </ol> <p>* 9. Company commander adjust the direct fires plan based on updated intelligence and reconnaissance effort.</p> <p>* 10. Company commander updates the enemy situation.</p> <p>* 11. Company commander disseminates updated overlays, and other pertinent information.</p> <p>12. Company elements conduct tactical movement to designated positions.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Secure and occupy positions.</li> <li>b. Orient on the correct engagement area (EA), sector of fires, etc., using the following. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Target reference points (TRPs).</li> <li>(2) Clock direction.</li> <li>(3) Terrain-based quadrants.</li> <li>(4) Friendly-based quadrants.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> <p>* 13. Company commander coordinates and or synchronizes actions of the company elements.</p> <p>* 14. Company commander uses fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) as necessary and designated signals to redirect actions of subordinate elements.</p> <p>15. Company elements execute the direct fires plan.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Acquire targets.</li> <li>b. Engage targets using the appropriate weapon system for each target in accordance with (IAW) current doctrine. (The following are examples.) <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) SPG-9 engages tank first, then other armored vehicles.</li> <li>(2) Dismounted infantry engage crew-served weapons, then infantry.</li> </ol> </li> <li>c. Engage targets using the designated priority.</li> <li>d. Engage targets using the appropriate engagement technique.</li> <li>e. Initiate fires on the designated command, signal, or situation.</li> </ol>		
---	--	--

f. Mass the effects of fires. g. Destroy the greatest threat first. h. Avoid target overkill. i. Prevent fratricide.  16. Company consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.  17. Company secures enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.  18. Company treats and evacuates casualties.  19. Company processes captured documents and or equipment as required.  20. Company continues operations as directed.		
---	--	--

TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK						
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

**Task Title**

- Conduct an Area or Zone Reconnaissance (Infantry Company)
- Report Tactical Information (Infantry Company)
- Integrate Direct Fires (Infantry Company)
- Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Infantry Company)
- Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Infantry Company)
- Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry Company)
- Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Antiarmor/Infantry Company)
- Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)
- Maintain Operations Security (Infantry Company)

## TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINE

**TASK:** Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Infantry Company) (07-2-3036)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is conducting operations as part of a larger force and is required to integrate fire support for the mission. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The company has been provided the kandak target list. The company has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The company has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company plans and integrates fire support in accordance with (IAW) tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and or higher commander's guidance. The company commander and or fire support team (FIST) determines desired effect fires should have on the enemy. The company commander and or fire support team (FIST) plan, integrate, and coordinate indirect fires to support all phases of the operation. The company commander and or forward observer (FO) employs indirect fires using the correct "call for fire" format and procedures. The company complies with the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO GO</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. Company leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using information that is gathered from maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</li> <li>* 2. Company commander confirms friendly and enemy situations.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Receives an updated report showing the location of forward and adjacent friendly elements, if applicable.</li> <li>b. Receives an updated enemy situational template for added fratricide prevention and increased force protection, if applicable.</li> <li>c. Clarifies priority intelligence requirement (PIR) requirements.</li> <li>d. Confirms any changes to the higher headquarters and company task or purpose.</li> <li>e. Confirms any changes to the scheme of maneuver.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. Company commander conducts a map reconnaissance.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identifies tentative target reference points (TRPs).</li> <li>b. Identify probable or known enemy locations.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. Company commander and fire support team (FIST) plan fire support.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determine desired effect on the enemy (suppress, isolate, obscure, neutralize, destroy, deceive, or disrupt).</li> <li>b. Plans priority of fires (should support the main effort).</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

- c. Identifies priority targets.
- d. Plans close air support, if available.
- e. Identifies ammunition restrictions and controlled supply rate.
- f. Develops graphical fire control measures.
  - (1) Determine control measures to initiate fires, lift fires, and shift fires.
- g. Confirms whether the use of smoke, illumination, is restricted and who controls them.
- h. Determines communications procedures to use when calling for fire. (radio net, call signs, and fire direction center [FDC].)
- i. Determines when and under what circumstances to engage targets.
- j. Determines the method of engagement and method of control to be used.
- k. Develop the indirect fire plan at the same time as the OFFENSIVE SCHEME of maneuver.
  - (1) Integrate direct fires and indirect fires to support maneuver throughout the operation.
  - (2) Plan fires that support the commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.
  - (3) Plan fires to support all phases of the attack.
  - (4) Plan fires for targets of concern (those targets that may deter the success of the maneuver).
  - (5) Plan smoke or other to screen the company elements when crossing a danger area, breaching an obstacle, or to obscure known or suspected enemy positions.
- l. Develop the indirect fire plan to support the DEFENSIVE SCHEME of maneuver.
  - (1) Plan fires that support the commander's intent.
  - (2) Plan fires on all likely enemy positions and on areas the enemy may use in the attack, such as:
    - (a) Observation posts (OPs).
    - (b) Support positions.
    - (c) Avenues of approach.
    - (d) Assault positions.
    - (e) Dead space.
    - (f) Flanks.
    - (g) Defiles.
  - (3) Plan fires in front of, on top of, and behind friendly positions to stop likely penetrations or to support a counterattack.
  - (4) Integrate final protective fires (FPFs) into the company fire and obstacle plans.
  - (5) Plan fires that cover planned or existing obstacles.
  - (6) Plan smoke to screen friendly movements. (Defending units use smoke sparingly.)
  - (7) Plan illumination.

Note: The company commander normally retains control of illumination in the defense.

\* 5. Company commander and fire support team (FIST), if available, prepare for fire support execution.

- a. Prepare an observation plan.

- (1) Designate primary and alternate observers.
- (2) Brief observers on target tasks and purposes.
- (3) Ensure observers are positioned to observe:
  - (a) Identify engagement area.
- (4) Consider available assets such as the range finders.
- b. Prepare a trigger to initiate fires for each target.
  - (1) Include engagement criteria.
  - (2) Prepare trigger lines based on the following:
    - (a) Rate of travel by enemy forces to the engagement area.
    - (b) Amount of time required to call for fires.
    - (c) Time of flight of the indirect fire rounds.
    - (d) Clearance of fires at company and or company team level.
    - (e) Possible adjustment times.
- c. Prepare a trigger for lifting and shifting fires (For offensive operations, uses a minimum safe line [MSL].)

6. Company conducts rehearsal.

- a. Involves observers in company rehearsals.
- b. Ensures the company's primary and alternate communications systems will support the fire support plan.

\* 7. Company commander or designated representative conducts a reconnaissance to confirm the indirect fire plan, if possible.

\* 8. Company commander distributes the indirect fire support plan/execution matrix to subordinate leaders as a part of the operation order (OPORD).

- a. Ensures a copy of the fire plan is provided to higher headquarters.
- b. Ensures the fire support plan is incorporated into rehearsals.

\* 9. Company commander uses fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) as necessary to redirect actions of subordinate elements.

\* 10. Company commander or forward observer (FO) employs indirect fire support using radio communications.

- a. Ensures all available supporting fires are executed in a timely manner and accomplish the prescribed result in accordance with (IAW) the fire plan and execution matrix.
- b. Ensures the employment of smoke does not degrade the company mission.
- c. Adjusts the priorities of fire as the battle progresses.
- d. Calls for fire using the following procedure.
  - (1) Proper standardized call for fire (CFF).
  - (2) Proper radio communications procedures to call for fire (if applicable).
  - (3) Observer identification and warning order. (Adjust fire, fire for effect, suppress, or immediate suppression.)
  - (4) Target location methods. (Grid, polar, or shift from a known point.)
  - (5) Target description using size and or shape,

- nature/nomenclature, activity, protection/posture (SNAP).
- (6) Various techniques for area adjustment, such as:
    - (a) Successive bracketing.
    - (b) One round adjustment.
    - (c) Creeping fire.
  - (7) Correct observer target (OT) factor and angular deviation (if applicable).
  - (8) Subsequent corrections.
  - (9) Fire for effect when burst within 50 meters.

\* 11. Company commander or forward observer (FO) conducts voice "fire for effect missions".

- a. Ensures the impact of the adjustment rounds are close enough to have the desired effects with the first volley fired.
- b. Requests appropriate shell/fuze combination.

Note: If desired effects are not achieved, the observer does the following: adjusts the rounds and repeats; changes shell/fuze combination; requests additional fire for effect volleys.

\* 12. Company commander directs the observer to take the following actions if desired effects are not achieved:

- a. Adjust the rounds and repeat.
- b. Change shell and or fuze combination.
- c. Request additional fire for effect volleys.

\* 13. Company commander or forward observer (FO) conducts radio immediate suppression missions.

- a. Identifies the target (observer).
- b. Plots the target accurately.
- c. Transmits complete call for fire.
- d. Ensures an accurate target location is close enough to have the desired effects with the first volley fired.
- e. Ensures final suppression rounds are within 150 meters of the target (if necessary).

Note: If desired effects are not achieved, the observer does the following: Adjusts the rounds and repeats; changes shell/fuze combination; requests additional fire for effect volleys.

14. Forward observer (FO) observes munitions effects and reports battle damage assessments.

- a. Estimates the extent of damage to the target and or casualties.
- b. Reports damage assessment to the fire direction center (FDC) providing fires.

15. Forward observer (FO), with laser locator, conducts a high burst (HB) and or mean point of impact (MPI) registration (field artillery (FA) only), by voice communications, when directed.

Note: Fire direction center (FDC) transmits orienting data to observer.

- a. Orients using orienting data.
- b. Announces to fire direction center (FDC) ready to observe.
- c. Lases the burst.

<p>d. Records and transmits burst location to fire direction center (FDC) until fire direction center (FDC) terminates registration.</p> <p>*16. Company commander or forward observer (FO) registers, confirms, and adjusts a parallel sheaf for mortars.</p> <p>a. Uses successive bracketing.</p> <p>b. Sends appropriate corrections to fire direction center (FDC).</p> <p>c. Adjusts sheaf to within 50 meters range and 40 meters lateral spread between rounds.</p>		
---	--	--

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

### **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

**Task Title**

- LOCATE A TARGET BY GRID COORDINATES
- LOCATE A TARGET BY SHIFT FROM A KNOWN POINT
- Analyze Terrain
- Plan for Use of Supporting Fires

### **SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

**Task Title**

- Conduct an Area or Zone Reconnaissance (Infantry Company)
- Report Tactical Information (Infantry Company)
- Integrate Direct Fires (Infantry Company)
- Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)
- Maintain Operations Security (Infantry Company)

## TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINE

**TASK:** Employ Camouflage, Concealment, and Deception Techniques (Infantry Company) (07-2-6045)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is conducting operations as part of a larger force and has received an operation order (OPORD or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a mission at the location and time specified. The situation dictates that the company employ camouflage, concealment, and deception (CCD) techniques to deny selected information to the enemy. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The company has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The company has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company employs camouflage, concealment, and deception (CCD) techniques in accordance with (IAW) tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and or higher commander's guidance and or intent. Company commander ensures subordinate elements use proper camouflage, concealment, and deception (CCD) techniques. The company denies critical information to the enemy. The company complies with the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO GO</b>
<p>* 1. Company leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using information that is gathered from maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.</p> <p>* 2. Company commander receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) and issues warning order (WARNO) to the company using radio or other tactical means.</p> <p>* 3. Company commander plans using troop-leading procedures.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Conducts analysis based on factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC).</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(1) Considers the enemy's capabilities, likely courses of action (COAs), and specific weapons capabilities.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Confers with the staff engineer (if available) to determine appropriate camouflage, concealment, and deception (CCD) employment techniques.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">c. Determines camouflage, concealment, and deception (CCD) priorities based on factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC).</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">d. Sets camouflage, concealment, and deception (CCD) goals and or intent, based of higher headquarter (HQ) operation order (OPORD),</p>		

and relays goals and or intent to command.  
e. Considers camouflage, concealment, and deceptions (CCD's) effects on unit recognition by friendly troops, to help prevent fratricide.

\* 4. Company commander or designated representative ensures subordinate elements use proper camouflage, concealment, and deception (CCD) techniques.

- a. Use natural conditions and materials before using man made materials.
- b. Employ deception to help mask the real intent of primary combat operations and aid in achieving surprise in accordance with (IAW) higher headquarters (HQ) deception plan.
- c. Observe noise discipline.
- d. Observe light discipline with respect to smoking, fires, and lights.
- e. Conceal highly visible equipment.
- f. Cover shiny surfaces.
- g. Keep exposed activity to a minimum.
- h. Use cut vegetation properly.
- i. Use and conceal dismount points properly.
- j. Place and disperse vehicles and equipment.
- k. Disperse the command post (CP).
- l. Employ camouflage nets.
- m. Use (or minimizes) shadows.
- n. Minimize movement.
- o. Blend operations and equipment with backgrounds.
- p. Employ pattern-painting techniques.
- q. Employ decoys.
- r. Integrate smoke operations with company movement.
- s. Wear the correct uniform.
- t. Control litter and spoil.

\* 5. Company commander coordinates and or synchronizes actions of subordinate elements.

6. Company elements employ camouflage, concealment, and deception (CCD) on fighting positions by:

- a. Eliminating or minimizing target silhouettes.
- b. Practicing spoil control.
- c. Eliminating or minimizing regular or geometric shapes and layouts.
- d. Maintaining overhead concealment.
- e. Practicing dust control.

7. Company elements employ camouflage, concealment, and deception (CCD) on tactical vehicles by.

- a. Minimizing and concealing track marks.
- b. Minimizing or eliminating the shine on vehicles and equipment.
- c. Reducing or using shadows to the unit's advantage.
- d. Employing camouflage nets.
- e. Painting vehicles to match their surroundings.
- f. Dispersing vehicles and equipment.
- g. Concealing vehicles and supply routes.

- h. Controlling litter and spoil.
- i. Storing and concealing ammunition.

8. Company elements employ camouflage, concealment, and deception (CCD) on assembly areas (AAs) by.
- a. Facilitating mission planning for entrance and exit of concealment.
  - b. Marking guideposts for route junctions.
  - c. Ensuring that turn-ins are not widened by improper use.
  - d. Dispersing dismount, mess, and maintenance areas.
  - e. Dispersing the command post (CP).
  - f. Maintaining camouflage, concealment, and deception (CCD) by.
    - (1) Inspecting camouflage, concealment, and deception (CCD) frequently.
    - (2) Controlling litter and garbage.
    - (3) Observing blackout procedures.
  - g. Observing evaluation procedures by.
    - (1) Policing the area.
    - (2) Covering or eliminating tracks.
    - (3) Preventing traffic congestion.
    - (4) Concealing spoil.

9. Company elements employ camouflage, concealment, and deception (CCD) on the command post (CP) by.
- a. Ensuring that lines of communications (LOCs) are not converged.
  - b. Dispersing vehicles.
  - c. Ensuring that turn-ins are not widened through improper use.
  - d. Ensuring that protective barriers follow terrain features.
  - e. Concealing defensive weapons.
  - f. Ensuring that existing poles are used for lines of communications (LOCs).
  - g. Digging in the command post (CP) (when in open areas).
  - h. Maintaining camouflage nets.
  - i. Using civilian buildings properly by:
    - (1) Controlling access and egress.
    - (2) Observing blackout procedures.
    - (3) Avoiding obvious locations.

10. Company elements employ camouflage, concealment, and deception (CCD) on supply points by.
- a. Dispersing operations.
  - b. Concealing access and egress routes.
  - c. Using the track plan.
  - d. Providing concealed loading areas.
  - e. Developing and implementing a schedule for the units being serviced.

11. Company elements employ camouflage, concealment, and deception (CCD) on water points by.
- a. Concealing access and egress routes.
  - b. Ensuring that the track plan is used.
  - c. Controlling spillage.

d. Controlling shine and reflections. e. Developing and implementing a schedule for the units being serviced.  *12. Company subordinate leaders enforce individual camouflage, concealment and deception (CCD).		
--	--	--

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

## TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINE

**TASK:** Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Company) (07-2-1216)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is conducting operations as part of a larger force and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) directing it to disengage and withdraw immediately from the enemy and reposition for another mission. The withdrawal may or may not be conducted under enemy pressure and is unassisted. Indirect fire support is available. The company is directed to designate a detachment left in contact (DLIC). All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The company has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The company has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company conducts the withdrawal in accordance with (IAW) tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and or higher commander's guidance. The company disengages and moves to a designated location where the enemy cannot observe or engage it with direct fire. The company designates a detachment left in contact (DLIC). The company complies with the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO GO</b>
<p>* 1. Company leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using information that is gathered from maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p>* 2. Company commander receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) and issues warning order (WARNO) to the company using radio, or other tactical means.</p> <p>* 3. Company commander confirms friendly and enemy situations.            a. Receives an updated enemy situational template for added fratricide prevention and increased force protection, if available.</p> <p>* 4. Company commander plans using troop-leading procedures.            a. Makes an estimate of the situation and prepares a contingency plan to break contact or withdraw.            b. Indicates the method of disengagement based on enemy pressure (not under pressure or under enemy pressure).            c. Determines when and where the withdrawal will start.            d. Determines the locations for assembly areas (AA) (company, company, and platoon) or battle position (BP) to which the company will withdraw.</p>		

- e. Determines the route(s) to be used during the withdrawal.
- f. Coordinates with adjacent companies, if necessary.
- g. Plans deception activities.
- h. Determines specific tasks for subordinate units.
- i. Provides any special instructions on employment of special weapons platoons, squads, and or teams. For example: mortars.
- j. Conducts fire planning (organic, supporting, and obscuring) for indirect fires along the withdrawal route to aid in disengagement and antiarmor fires.
- k. Organizes the company as necessary to accomplish the mission and or compensate for combat losses.
  - (1) Designates a platoon and or element as the detachment left in conflict (DLIC).
  - (2) Determines the size, composition, mission, and leader of the detachment left in conflict (DLIC).
  - (3) Designates a quartering party.
- l. Determines the withdrawal and linkup plan for the detachment left in contact (DLIC).
- m. Determines future missions.
- n. Directs the platoons to walk the routes during daylight and during limited visibility, if applicable and as time and the situation permits.
- o. Plans to withdraw under limited visibility conditions, if possible.
- p. Addresses actions on chance contact with the enemy.

5. Quartering party accomplishes the following:

- a. Conducts reconnaissance of positions to which company will withdraw.
- b. Selects subordinate element positions and or sectors.
- c. Selects observation post (OP) positions for company.
- d. Provides guides as necessary.
- e. Coordinates with the unit/element through which the company will conduct a rearward passage of lines, if required.

\* 6. Company commander disseminates overlays, and other pertinent information to each platoon to keep them abreast of the situation.

\* 7. Company commander issues orders and instructions to include rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).

- a. Issues clear and concise taskings to platoons and or elements.

8. Company conducts a rehearsal, if withdrawal is not under enemy pressure.

9. Company withdraws UNDER ENEMY PRESSURE

- a. Uses detachment left in contact (DLIC) to cover the withdrawal, of company elements, by deception and maneuver. The company commander uses one of the following methods to designate the detachment left in contact (DLIC):

- (1) Designates one platoon to execute the detachment left in contact (DLIC) mission with the platoon leader as the detachment left in contact (DLIC) leader.

(2) Constitutes the detachment left in contact (DLIC) using ad hoc elements from all platoons, with the first sergeant (1SG) or other designated person as the detachment left in contact (DLIC) leader.

b. Moves platoons from their positions to their designated assembly area (AA) and then to the company assembly area (AA) upon order or at the designated time. (After all equipment and personnel are accounted for.)

c. Moves company to the higher headquarters' assembly area (AA) upon order or at the designated time. (After all equipment and personnel are accounted for.)

10. Company withdraws NOT UNDER ENEMY PRESSURE.

Note: Company commander plans quickly and issues fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) to control the withdrawal.

a. Moves not needed vehicles and or equipment to the rear before the withdrawal starts.

b. Moves mortars and other special weapon systems where they can provide support to the withdrawal.

c. Withdraws least heavily engaged platoon and or element first.

(1) Platoon/element disengages and moves into a position where it can overwatch the disengagement of the more heavily engaged platoons and or elements.

(2) Platoons/elements continuing maneuvering to the rear and providing overwatch in turn.

Note: Once the company is disengaged, it moves as directed by the company commander.

\* 11. Company commander completes withdrawal actions.

a. Sends situation report (SITREP) to higher headquarters commander as required.

12. Company consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.

13. Company secures enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.

14. Company treats and evacuates casualties.

15. Company processes captured documents and or equipment as required.

16. Company continues operations as directed.

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

"\*" Indicates a leader task step

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

**Task Title**

- Conduct an Area or Zone Reconnaissance (Infantry Company)
- Report Tactical Information (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Overwatch and or Support by Fire (Infantry Company)
- Integrate Direct Fires (Infantry Company)
- Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Infantry Company)
- Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Infantry Company)
- Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry Company)
- Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Antiarmor/Infantry Company)
- Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)
- Employ Camouflage, Concealment, and Deception Techniques (Infantry Company)
- Maintain Operations Security (Infantry Company)

## TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINE

**TASK:** Maintain Operations Security (Infantry Company) (07-2-6063)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is conducting operations as part of a larger force and must maintain operations security to deny the enemy information about friendly activities taking place in the area of operations (AO). All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The company has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The enemy has the capability to detect the company visually, audibly, and electronically. The company has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company maintains operations security in accordance with (IAW) tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and or higher commander's guidance. The company practices active and passive noise, light, litter, and communications discipline to deny friendly information to enemy forces. The company complies with the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO GO</b>
<p>* 1. Company leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using information that is gathered from maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.</p> <p>* 2. Company commander protects friendly information by checking or performing the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prohibits fraternization with civilians (as applicable).</li> <li>b. Makes sure maps do not contain the friendly order of battle.</li> <li>c. Conducts inspections and gives briefings to ensure that personnel do not carry details of military activities in personal materials (letters, diaries, notes, drawings, sketches, or photographs).</li> <li>d. Safeguards weapons, ammunition, sensitive items, and classified documents.</li> <li>e. Sanitizes all planning areas and positions before departure.</li> </ul> <p>3. Company employs active and passive security measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Mans and performs surveillance from observation posts (OPs).</li> <li>b. Conducts counter reconnaissance patrols, if possible.</li> <li>c. Destroys enemy reconnaissance elements, when encountered.</li> <li>d. Conducts stand to procedures.</li> <li>e. Establishes local security.</li> <li>f. Establishes specific levels of alert based on factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC).</li> </ul>		

g. Uses camouflage.

- (1) Ensures fighting positions are camouflaged using exposed dirt to break the outline of a position.
- (2) Checks the position from the enemy's point of view.
- (3) Ensures camouflage nets (if used) are properly hung.
- (4) Employs overhead camouflage and sites positions and personnel to prevent detection from the air.
- (5) Keeps personnel and equipment in the shadows, when possible.
- (6) Ensures all personnel use camouflage paint to cover exposed skin.
- (7) Covers all reflective surfaces with non reflective material, such as cloth, mud, or camouflage stick.
- (8) Avoids crossing near footpaths, trails, and or roads, where possible.
- (9) Erases tracks leading into the positions.
- (10) Camouflages equipment using vegetation to break up the outline of the equipment and covers all reflective surfaces.

h. Enforces litter discipline.

- (1) Collects and back hauls trash during logistics runs during stationary periods.
- (2) Carries trash until it can be disposed of securely.

i. Uses terrain and vegetation for concealment.

j. Controls movement.

- (1) Uses the proper movement formation and movement technique.
- (2) Moves as fast as the situation permits.
- (3) Moves along covered and concealed routes.

4. Company practices radio discipline.

a. Uses the proper radio procedures.

- (1) Changes frequencies and call signs in accordance with (IAW) signal operating instructions (SOI) and or tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP).
- (2) Uses varied transmission schedules and lengths.
- (3) Uses established formats to expedite transmissions.
- (4) Encodes messages or uses secure voice.
- (5) Uses brevity codes, when possible.
- (6) Uses the lowest power settings possible.
- (7) Avoids transmission patterns.
- (8) Maintains radio silence, as directed.

b. Takes action if jamming is suspected.

- (1) Continues to operate.
- (2) Disconnects the antenna.
- (3) Switches to the highest power.
- (4) Relocates the radio.
- (5) Uses directional antennas.
- (6) Turns the squelch off.

c. Uses messenger and wire whenever possible, especially in static positions.

d. Uses the radio in the quiet message mode. Transmits an arranged

<p>number of taps or uses the PUSH-TO-TALK switch in the same manner.</p> <p>5. Company practices light discipline.</p> <p>a. Conceals lights necessary for planning or reading a map. (A poncho can be used for this purpose). Ensures all flashlights have filters.</p> <p>b. Removes or tapes personal items that may reflect light (identification tags, rings, and watches).</p> <p>c. Prohibits use of cigarettes and open fires during darkness or when smoke and or fire may be observed by the enemy.</p> <p>d. Uses only passive night observation equipment (if possible).</p> <p>6. Company practices noise discipline.</p> <p>a. Identifies shortcomings in noise discipline during final inspections.</p> <p>b. Tapes down or removes items that make noise.</p> <p>c. Uses normal means of communication to the greatest extent possible.</p> <p>d. Prohibits talking except as required to conduct or plan operations.</p> <p>e. Ensures hand and arm signals are used, to the fullest extent possible, during daylight hours or with night vision devices.</p>		
---	--	--

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

### **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

**Task Title**

- Establish an Observation Post
- Challenge Persons Entering Your Area
- Perform Surveillance without the Aid of Electronic Devices
- Employ Field-Expedient Early Warning Devices

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

## TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINE

**TASK:** Conduct Resupply Operations (Antiarmor/Infantry Company) (07-2-4000)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is conducting operations as part of a larger force and is required to conduct resupply operations. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The company has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company conducts resupply operations in accordance with (IAW) tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and or higher commander's guidance. The company consolidates supply requests from subordinate elements and forwards requests to higher headquarters. The company coordinates logistical package (LOGPAC) and or aerial resupply operations. The company participates refuel on the move (ROM) as directed.

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO GO</b>
<p>* 1. Company leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using information that is gathered from maps, intelligence summaries, situations reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p>* 2. Company commander or designated representative anticipates needs and ensures resupply requests are submitted before current supplies are exhausted.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Reports equipment status and losses.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Reports supply status.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">c. Ensures required basic loads, supplies, and platoon equipment are on hand.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(1) Consolidates requests from platoon leaders.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(2) Submits ammunition and resupply requests early for resupply.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(3) Supervises ammunition stockage, when used.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(4) Coordinates with headquarters and headquarters company (HHC) supply sergeant, or executive officer (XO) for support.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(5) Distributes supplies according to the plan.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(6) Requests fortification materials (Class IV), as appropriate, for obstacle construction during defensive operations.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(7) Requests resupply based on actual losses and expenditures and forecasted requirements.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(8) Ensured requests are encoded when operating radios on a non secure net.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">d. Determines arrival time and logistics release point (LRP) for the logistical package (LOGPAC).</p>		

- e. Determines method of resupply.
  - (1) Service station method: Determines if individuals, teams, squads, or the entire platoon will rotate through the resupply point at the same time.
  - (2) Tailgate method: Determines priority of resupply for fighting positions.
- f. Coordinates refuel on the move (ROM), if required.

\* 3. First sergeant meets logistical package (LOGPAC) convoy at the logistic release point (LRP).

- \* 4. First sergeant supervises resupply.
- a. Issues fragmentary order (FRAGO) alerting platoon and or section personnel that logistical package (LOGPAC) is en route.
  - b. Performs resupply as quickly as possible using the designated method.
  - c. Ensures security is maintained during resupply operations.
  - d. Ensures elements maintain proper dispersion during resupply, if applicable.
  - e. Receives and or issues mail.
  - f. Receives replacement personnel.
  - g. Uses back hauling to remove casualties, damaged equipment, excess ammunition, and other items.

5. Company conducts aerial resupply.
- a. Conducts a reconnaissance of the selected landing zone (LZ) or drop zone (DZ) to confirm that it meets the factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time and civil considerations (METT-TC) and aircraft size requirements.
  - b. Organizes the company to receive aerial resupply.
    - (1) Designates a security element.
    - (2) Designates a recovery and distribution element.
  - c. Secures the landing zone (LZ).
  - d. Identifies a distribution point for supplies.
  - e. Prepares the landing zone (LZ) or drop zone (DZ) (recovery and distribution element), once the security element has secured the landing zone (LZ) or drop zone (DZ).
    - (1) Removes obstacles in the landing zone (LZ) or drop zone (DZ), if possible, and marks obstacles it cannot remove.
    - (2) Removes foreign object debris (FOD) that may interfere with the resupply aircraft.
    - (3) Marks the load impact area or aircraft landing point in a manner identified by the higher headquarters and or tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP) (for example, smoke, lights, VS 17 panels, field-expedient markers).
    - (4) Divides the air-dropped load (if required) and moves it to the distribution point.
    - (5) Unloads the aircraft, divides the load (if required), and moves it to the distribution point.
    - (6) Conceals the landing zone (LZ) or drop zone (DZ) by removing any indication of its use, such as aircraft tracks, and

<p>recover markers, equipment, and any other items that may identify its use for resupply.</p> <p>f. Controls the break down of supplies in accordance with the allocation plan at the distribution point.</p> <p>6. Company participates in refuel on the move (ROM), if required.</p> <p>a. Confirms refuel on the move (ROM) site with higher headquarters.</p> <p>b. Moves to the refuel on the move (ROM) site in accordance with (IAW) operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) and mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC) factors.</p> <p>c. Refuels in accordance with (IAW) order, guidance, and or tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP).</p> <p>d. Maintains security and dispersion during refueling operation.</p> <p>e. Reports status of refuel on the move (ROM) operation to higher headquarters.</p> <p>7. Company conducts emergency resupply.</p> <p>a. Submits request for emergency resupply of Classes III, V, and IX to higher headquarters.</p> <p>b. Coordinates linkup for emergency resupply with higher headquarters.</p> <p>c. Moves to designated linkup point and conducts resupply.</p> <p>8. Company continues operations as directed.</p>		
--	--	--

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

**Task Title**

Report Tactical Information (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)

Report Tactical Information (Infantry Company)

Conduct Risk Management (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)

## **SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS Cont'd**

### **Task Title**

Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Company)  
Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)  
Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)  
Maintain Operations Security (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)  
Maintain Operations Security (Infantry Company)

## TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINE

**TASK:** Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Infantry Company) (07-2-4027)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is conducting operations as part of a larger force and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a combat mission at the location and time specified. The company has under its control enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) that were captured or surrendered during the operation. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The company has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The company has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company handles enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) in accordance with (IAW) tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, guidance from higher headquarters, and the Geneva Convention. The company segregates, safeguards, and moves enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) to the rear as quickly as mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC) allows. The company complies with the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO GO</b>
<p>* 1. Company leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using information that is gathered from maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p>* 2. The company executive officer (XO) or first sergeant (1SG) designates an enemy prisoner of war (EPW) collection point based on the mission and commander's intent.</p> <p>* 3. Company commander or designated representative notifies higher headquarters that the company has enemy prisoner of war (EPW).</p> <p>* 4. Company commander or designated representative assigns guards to protect and control enemy prisoner of war (EPW) until they can be moved to higher headquarters.</p> <p>*5. Company commander or designated representative ensures enemy prisoners of war (EPW) are/have been searched.            a. Gives prisoners receipts for personal property taken, if not done by capturing element.</p> <p>*6. Company commander or designated representative ensures enemy prisoners of war (EPW) are segregated.</p>		

<p>a. Segregates enemy prisoner of war (EPW) by rank, sex, deserters, civilians, nationality, and ideology when possible.</p> <p>b. Restricts enemy prisoners from areas where they can obtain information about the unit's mission, strength, and future operations.</p> <p>7. Company guards keep enemy prisoner of war (EPWs) silent.</p> <p>a. Prevents enemy prisoner of war (EPW) leaders from giving orders.</p> <p>b. Prevents enemy prisoner of war (EPW) from planning escape.</p> <p>c. Does not talk in front of enemy prisoner of war (EPW) except to issue orders and maintain discipline.</p> <p>8. Company safeguards enemy prisoner of war (EPW).</p> <p>a. Removes enemy prisoner of war (EPWs) from dangers of the battlefield.</p> <p>b. Does not allow anyone to abuse enemy prisoner of war (EPWs).</p> <p>c. Prevents any prisoners from escaping.</p> <p>d. Provides humane treatment for enemy prisoner of war (EPWs) without distinction founded on race, nationality, religious belief, political opinions, or other similar criteria.</p> <p>e. Provides food to enemy prisoner of war (EPWs). (Provides the same rations and drink that are available to company soldiers.)</p> <p>f. Provides medical treatment within the company's ability.</p> <p>g. Complies with rule of interaction (ROI), rule of engagement (ROE), and the Geneva Convention.</p> <p>*9. Company commander or designated representative ensures enemy prisoner of war (EPWs) are tagged with Enemy Prisoner of War Capture Tag.</p> <p>a. Annotates the following information.</p> <p>(1) Date and time of capture.</p> <p>(2) Capturing unit.</p> <p>(3) Grid coordinates of capture.</p> <p>(4) Circumstance of capture</p> <p>b. Attaches Part A to enemy prisoner of war (EPW).</p> <p>c. Retains Part B for unit records.</p> <p>d. Attaches Part C to property.</p> <p>*10. Company commander or designated representative questions enemy prisoner of war (EPWs).</p> <p>a. Attains immediate combat information, if the tactical situation permits.</p> <p>(1) Reports gathered intelligence information to higher headquarters.</p> <p>b. Ensures questioning does not slow the evacuation process.</p> <p>11. Company speeds enemy prisoner of war (EPWs) to the rear.</p> <p>a. Coordinates for transportation, food, water, and emergency clothing for enemy prisoner of war (EPWs).</p> <p>b. Moves enemy prisoner of war (EPWs) rearward to the nearest enemy prisoner of war (EPW) collection point in accordance with (IAW) the order, tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), and</p>		
---	--	--

or guidance from higher. c. Processes captured documents and or equipment as required.  12. Company continues operations as directed.		
--	--	--

TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK						
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

**Task Title**

- Report Tactical Information (Infantry Company)
- Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)
- Maintain Operations Security (Infantry Company)

## TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINE

**TASK:** Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry Company) (07-2-4045)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is conducting operations as part of a larger force and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a combat mission at the location and time specified. During the mission, the company captures enemy documents and or equipment that must be processed. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The company has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The company has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company processes all captured documents and equipment in accordance with (IAW) tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and or disposition instructions established by higher headquarters. The company evacuates documents and or equipment to the rear as quickly as mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC) allows.

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO GO</b>
<p>* 1. Company leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using information that is gathered from maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p>*2. Company commander or designated representative ensures all captured documents and equipment are tagged in accordance with (IAW) tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the operation order (OPORD), and or disposition instructions established by higher headquarters. (See platoon task: Process Captured Documents and Equipment.)</p> <p>* 3. Company commander reports capture of documents or equipment to higher headquarters.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Reports type of document or equipment.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Reports date and time of capture.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">c. Reports capturing unit.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">d. Reports place of capture (grid coordinates).</p> <p>4. Company processes all captured documents and equipment in accordance with (IAW) tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the operation order (OPORD), and or disposition instructions established by higher headquarters.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Destroys, secures, evacuates, or abandons the equipment.</p>		

b. Evacuates documents through the chain of command to intelligence personnel as soon as mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC) factors allow.		
--	--	--

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

## TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINE

**TASK:** Secure Civilians during Operations (Antiarmor/Infantry Company) (07-2-4054)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is conducting operations as part of a larger force has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to secure civilians to protect them from injury of combat. Some may be refugees and some may be inhabitants of the area in which the company is operating. Some may be openly hostile. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The company has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The company has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company secures civilians during operations in accordance with (IAW) tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and or higher commander's guidance. The company identifies and segregates combatants and noncombatants, searches them, safeguards them, and moves them out of the immediate area of operations. The company complies with the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO GO</b>
<p>* 1. Company leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using information that is gathered from maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.</p> <p>* 2. Company commander receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) and issues warning order (WARNO) to the company using radio or other tactical means.</p> <p>* 3. Company commander conducts troop-leading procedures with emphasis on the following.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Interpreters to help interface with the local populace, if necessary.</li> <li>b. Control measures for expected or unexpected situations.</li> <li>c. Organization of the company to accomplish the mission and or compensate for combat losses.</li> </ul> <p>*4. Company commander disseminates reports and overlays to each subordinate element to keep them abreast of the situation.</p> <p>* 5. Company commander issues orders and instructions to include rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issues clear and concise taskings to platoons and or elements.</li> </ul>		

6. Company conducts a rehearsal.

\*7. Company commander or designated representative supervises operation.

- a. Ensures civilians are treated with respect.
- b. Ensures elements understand rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).
- c. Ensures elements/soldiers understand procedures for dealing with news media.
- d. Uses fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) as necessary to redirect actions of subordinate elements.

8. Designated platoons/elements secure civilians.

- a. Maintain 360 degree and three dimensional security in the area of operation (AO) in which civilians are gathered.
- b. Segregate civilians identified as being combatants or suspected war criminals and treats them like enemy prisoners of war (EPWs).
- c. Report this situation and status in a timely manner to higher headquarters using radio, or other tactical means.
- d. Assign personnel to search civilians.
  - (1) Keeps identification papers with civilians under all circumstances, regardless of status.
- e. Restrain and detains noncombatants who do not follow instructions.
  - (1) Safeguard noncombatants and provides humane but firm treatment at all times.
  - (2) Move noncombatants away from firefights and the immediate combat area.
- f. Provide food, water, and medical attention based upon the medical rules of engagement (ROE) for civilian medical treatment.
- g. Assign guards to escort the civilians.
  - (1) Evacuate civilians to a processing and or reception station or to an intermediate collection point run by higher headquarters.
  - (2) Guards escorting the civilians are prepared to give concise information to the processing/reception station or intermediate collection point about the original location of the civilians and their actions since being encountered (i.e. reluctant, totally uncooperative, hostile, etc.).

9. Company personnel give proper consideration to the press and local officials.

- a. Follows rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI) guidance as to whether the local civilians and officials are to be considered friendly, hostile, or uncertain.

10. Company continues operations as directed.

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

"\*" indicates a leader task

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

**Task Title**

- Control Civil Disturbance Operations (Antiarmor/Infantry Company)
- Report Tactical Information (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)
- Report Tactical Information (Infantry Company)
- Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Infantry Company)
- Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry Company)
- Conduct a Rehearsal (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)
- Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Risk Management (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)
- Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)
- Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)
- Maintain Operations Security (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)
- Maintain Operations Security (Infantry Company)

## TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINE

**TASK:** Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Antiarmor/Infantry Company) (07-2-4063)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is conducting operations as part of a larger force and has sustained casualties during the current mission. The company has an aid team attached and at least one combat lifesaver for each section/squad. The company has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The company has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company treats and evacuates casualties in accordance with (IAW) tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and or higher commander's guidance. The company administers the proper lifesaving measures to stabilize the casualty. The company evacuates casualties to the higher headquarters' casualty collection point. The company complies with the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO GO</b>
<p>* 1. Company leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using information that is gathered from maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.</p> <p>* 2. Company executive officer (XO) and first sergeant (1SG) plan casualty treatment and evacuation with the senior company or platoon aidman.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designate company casualty collection point.</li> <li>b. Plan casualty evacuation routes.</li> <li>c. Plan for taking care of the casualty's weapon and equipment.</li> <li>d. Plan security of the casualty collection point.</li> <li>e. Ensure aid and litter teams are designated by all elements.</li> <li>f. Ensure all elements are briefed on and understand rule of engagement (ROE) and rule of interaction (ROI).</li> <li>g. Disseminate treatment and evacuation plan to company.</li> </ul> <p>3. Company elements treat and evacuate casualties.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identify serious casualties requiring evacuation.</li> <li>b. Administer first aid to casualties.</li> <li>c. Stabilize the casualties.</li> <li>d. Administer the proper lifesaving measures.</li> <li>e. Position casualties on vehicle(s), if available.</li> <li>f. Retain classified documents [signal operating instructions (SOI), maps, orders, overlays] and mission-essential equipment (night vision devices, crew-served weapon) previously controlled by the casualty.</li> </ul>		

g. Deliver classified documents and mission-essential equipment to company headquarters as soon as factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC) allows.

\* 4. First sergeant (1SG) reports casualties to the kandak combat trains command post (CTCP) or higher headquarters trains command post.

- a. Reports key personnel losses.
- b. Includes number, location, and status of casualties.
- c. Ensures (Field Medical Card) and (Casualty Feeder Report) accompany all casualties.

\* 5. First sergeant (1SG), designated non-commission officer (NCO), or senior company aidman coordinates the casualty evacuation by ground ambulance to the kandak and or higher headquarters aid station or to the kandak and or higher headquarters collection point, and prepares them for transport.

- a. Moves casualties to the rear of the company position to a covered and concealed location.
- b. Retains classified documents signal operating instructions (SOI), (maps, orders, overlays) previously controlled by the casualty.
- c. Determines which casualties are most serious.
- d. Prevents further injury to casualties.
- e. Follows instructions in the operations order (OPORD) or tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP).
- f. Moves casualties using covered and concealed routes.

6. Company requests evacuation of casualties based on factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC).

- a. Submits medical evacuation (MEDEVAC) request using the correct format.
- b. Selects and marks the best available covered and concealed landing zone (LZ)
- c. Moves casualties by the best available means to the landing zone (LZ), and continues treatment.
- d. Assists the flight or ambulance crew with the casualties.
- e. Maintains security of the landing zone (LZ) to include coordinating any suppressive fires required.

7. Company evacuates contaminated casualties.

- a. Initiates decontamination before loading.
- b. Covers casualties if it is impossible to lessen the spread of contamination enroute.
- c. Ensures casualties are not evacuated to an uncontaminated facility or with uncontaminated casualties.
- d. Decontaminates vehicles and equipment as soon as possible.

8. Company evacuates enemy prisoner of war (EPW) casualties.

- a. Checks enemy bodies for booby traps.
- b. Searches enemy prisoner of war (EPW) for weapons and ordnance before evacuation.
- c. Prevents enemy prisoner of war (EPW) from having access to

<p>weapons during evacuation.</p> <p>d. Maintains security of enemy prisoner of war (EPW) casualties.</p> <p>e. Evacuates by the same standards as ANA casualties.</p> <p>* 9. First sergeant (1SG) supervises evacuation of killed in action (KIAs) and personal effects.</p> <p>a. Submits a casualty report to the kandak combat trains command post (CTCP) or higher headquarters trains command post in accordance with (IAW) the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP).</p> <p>b. Directs the recovery of killed in actions (KIAs) soldiers government property.</p> <p>c. Evacuates killed in actions (KIA) remains to the kandak or higher headquarters field trains by backhaul transportation.</p> <p>d. Transports killed in actions (KIAs) separately from wounded, if possible.</p> <p>e. Collects (Witness Statement on Individual) and (Casualty Feeder Report) and forwards to the kandak combat trains command post (CTCP) or higher headquarters trains command post.</p> <p>* 10. Executive officer (XO) or first sergeant (1SG) reassigns personnel.</p> <p>a. Bases reassignments on the commander's guidance.</p> <p>b. Ensures key positions are filled and critical weapons are manned.</p>		
---	--	--

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

**Task Title**

- Conduct Tactical Movement (Infantry Company)
- Report Tactical Information (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)
- Report Tactical Information (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)
- Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)
- Maintain Operations Security (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)
- Maintain Operations Security (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted or Dismounted) (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)

## TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINE

**TASK:** Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Company) (07-2-5009)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is conducting operations as part of a larger force and has received a warning order (WARNO) and operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) for an upcoming mission. Mission planning and coordination for the mission have been accomplished. Time is available to conduct a rehearsal. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The company has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The company has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company conducts a rehearsal prior to the beginning of the upcoming operation in accordance with the order, and or higher commander's guidance. The company uses the operation order, the synchronization matrix, and the decision support template (DST) as tools to focus and drive the rehearsal. The rehearsal covers critical aspects of the operation and provides necessary information for subordinate elements to execute their mission. The company commander comply with the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO GO</b>
<p>* 1. Company leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using information that is gathered from maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p>* 2. Company commander plans and prioritizes the rehearsal schedule.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Selects:</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(1) Type of rehearsal.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(2) Rehearsal technique.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(3) Place of rehearsal.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(4) Attendees.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(5) Enemy course of action (COA) to be portrayed.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Coordinates liaison officer (LNO) attendance from adjacent units, if required.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">c. Ensures rehearsal time and location are identified in the company operation order (OPORD) or warning order (WARNO).</p> <p>* 3. Company commander prepares for rehearsal.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Identifies and prioritizes key events to be rehearsed.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Allocates time.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">c. Confirms friendly and enemy situations.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(1) Receives an updated report showing the location of forward</p>		

and adjacent friendly elements, if applicable.

(2) Receives an updated enemy situational template for added fratricide prevention and increased force protection, if applicable.

(3) Clarifies priority intelligence requirement (PIR) requirements.

(4) Verifies if any changes to the company team task or purpose.

(5) Confirms any changes to the scheme of maneuver.

d. Reviews:

(1) Completeness of task organization.

(2) Readiness of personnel and material.

(3) Level of preparation for the assigned mission.

e. Disseminates reports overlays, and other pertinent information to each platoon to keep them abreast of the situation.

\* 4. Platoon (subordinate) leaders complete their planning process.

\* 5. Company commander or designated representative executes the rehearsal.

a. Conducts a formal roll call and ensures necessary equipment is on hand.

b. Validates task organization for the mission.

c. Rehearses synchronization of combat power from flank, higher, and his own units.

d. Synchronizes the timing and contribution of each operating system.

e. Keeps the rehearsal within established time constraints.

f. Ensures selected events receive appropriate attention.

g. Ensures absentees receive changes immediately.

h. Bases the execution actions on the enemy courses of action (COAs) he selected during the planning process:

(1) Portrays his best assessment of the enemy courses of action (COAs).

(2) Communicates the enemy commander's:

(a) Desired effects.

(b) Intended end state.

i. Restates any changes, coordination, or required clarification.

j. Estimates the time for a fragmentary order (FRAGO), finalize the changes, to follow.

k. Show participants the training aid and the terrain.

l. Defines the standard (what will be accepted as satisfactory performance for the rehearsal).

m. Visualizes and synchronizes the concept of operations.

n. Focuses on the key events and synchronization required to achieve the desired effect on the enemy.

o. Considers the enemy's courses of action (COAs).

p. Addresses any points in the operation where the execution of branches or sequels is likely to occur.

q. Rehearses again, if the standard is not met and time is available.

\* 6. Subordinate leaders articulate their element's actions and responsibilities.

a. Use an established format.

b. Record changes on their copies of the graphics or operation order

(OPORD). (1) Presumed concept of operation.  * 7. Company commander assembles participants to conduct an after action review (AAR). a. Updates operation order (OPORD) and or plan, as required.		
--	--	--

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

**Task Title**

Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Company)

Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)

## TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINE

**TASK:** Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Infantry Company) (07-2-5027)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is conducting operations as part of a larger force and has been in contact with the enemy. The platoon must consolidate and reorganize. The company has reestablished communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements, as required. Enemy forces have withdrawn to hasty defensive positions but have the capability to counterattack. The company has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants, to include the international press, may be present in the operational environment.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company consolidates and reorganizes in accordance with (IAW) tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP) and or higher commander's guidance. The company occupies or reoccupies hasty fighting positions, with sectors of fire, establishes security, accounts for all personnel and equipment, and reestablishes the chain of command. Wounded in action (WIAs) are identified, stabilized, and prepared for evacuation. Killed in action (KIAs) are identified and prepared for evacuation. Ammunition and supplies are redistributed as needed. The company complies with the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO GO</b>
<p>* 1. Company leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using information that is gathered from maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p>* 2. Company commander confirms friendly and enemy situations.            a. Receives an updated report showing the location of forward and adjacent friendly elements, if applicable.            b. Receives an updated enemy situational template for added fratricide prevention and increased force protection, if applicable.</p> <p>* 3. Company commander disseminates reports overlays, and other pertinent information to each platoon to keep them abreast of the situation.</p> <p>* 4. Company commander conducts troop-leading procedures.</p> <p>* 5. Company commander positions or repositions the observation post (OP) forward to provide security.            a. Ensures members are alert for a possible counterattack.            b. Ensures the company main body is not engaged without warning.</p> <p>6. Company occupies or reoccupies hasty fighting positions near the objective.</p>		

<p>a. Establishes all around security.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Evaluates terrain thoroughly.</li> <li>(2) Positions the platoons using the clock or the terrain feature technique.</li> <li>(3) Mans key weapons, as required by factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC).</li> </ul> <p>b. Destroys all organized resistance.</p> <p>c. Conducts reconnaissance of objective and or area of operations (AO) with local patrols and scouts to ensure it is free of enemy.</p> <p>d. Establishes local security.</p> <p>e. Defends against enemy counterattacks.</p> <p>f. Begins decontamination operations, if required and as factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC) dictate.</p> <p>g. Reestablishes the chain of command by filling key leader positions.</p> <p>h. Reestablishes communications nets.</p> <p>* 7. Company commander assigns or reassigns all platoons temporary sectors of fire.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures subordinate leaders adjust positions to cover likely avenues of approach and ensure mutual support between platoons and adjacent units.</li> </ul> <p>8. Company secures enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.</p> <p>* 9. Company commander reports any intelligence information of immediate value to next higher headquarters.</p> <p>* 10. All leaders supervise redistribution of ammunition and equipment.</p> <p>*11. Platoon leaders provides ammunition, casualty, and equipment (ACE) reports to the company headquarters.</p> <p>* 12. Company commander provides a consolidated ammunition, casualty, and equipment (ACE) report to his higher headquarters.</p> <p>* 13. Company commander or designated representative coordinates resupply.</p> <p>14. Company treats and evacuates casualties.</p> <p>15. Company processes captured documents and or equipment as required.</p> <p>16. Company continues operations as directed.</p>		
--	--	--

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

### **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

**Task Title**

- Load a PKM Machine Gun
- Perform a Function Check on an AK-47 Rifle Assault
- Perform a Function Check on a GP-30 Grenade Launcher
- Load a GP-30 Grenade Launcher
- Correct Malfunctions of a GP-30 Grenade Launcher
- Perform a Function Check on an RPK Machine Gun
- Load an RPK Machine Gun

### **SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

**Task Title**

- Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Company)
- Employ Obstacle(s) (Infantry Company)
- React to Snipers (Infantry Company)
- Take Action on Contact (Infantry Company)
- Conduct an Area or Zone Reconnaissance (Infantry Company)
- Establish Observation Posts (Infantry Company)
- Report Tactical Information (Infantry Company)
- Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Resupply Operations (Antiarmor/Infantry Company)
- Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry Company)
- Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Antiarmor/Infantry Company)
- Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Company)
- Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)
- Establish Communications (Infantry Company)
- Prepare for Combat (Infantry Company)
- Maintain Operations Security (Infantry Company)

## TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINE

**TASK:** Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company) (07-2-5081)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is conducting operations as part of a larger force and has received a warning order (WARNO), operation order (OPORD), or fragmentary order (FRAGO) for an upcoming mission. Time is available to conduct troop-leading procedures (TLP). All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The company has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The company has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company conducts troop-leading procedures in accordance with (IAW) the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP) and appropriate field manual. All planning, coordination, preparations, rehearsals, inspections, and orders are been conducted.

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO GO</b>
<p>* 1. Company leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using information that is gathered from maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.</p> <p>* 2. Company commander receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) and issues warning order (WARNO) to the company using radio or other tactical means.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">a. Includes. Warning order (WARNO)</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">(1) Company's mission and company commander's time line.</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">(2) Enough information for subordinate elements to start preparation for the mission.</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">(3) Movement instructions, if movement is to be initiated before operation order (OPORD) issuance.</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">(4) Items not covered in the unit tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP).</p> <p>* 3. Company commander conducts mission analysis.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">a. Focuses on determining the company's mission and the amount of available time.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">b. Begins immediately to analyze the mission briefly using the factors of mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC).</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">(1) Uses no more than one third of available planning time for his planning. (Allows subordinates to have two thirds of available planning time for their planning.)</p>		

- (2) Obtains clarification of the higher commander's intent two levels up, specified tasks, and implied tasks, if necessary.
- (3) Coordinates with adjacent, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) elements, as necessary or appropriate.

- \* 4. Company commander makes a tentative plan.
  - a. Develops an estimate of the situation which includes.
    - (1) Detailed mission analysis.
      - (a) Kandak commander's intent and his concept is understood.
      - (b) Analyze mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC) factors in as much detail as time and quality of information will allow.
      - (c) Identify specified, implied and essential tasks.
      - (d) Identify any constraints, for requirements for action and prohibition of actions.
      - (e) Restated company mission statement of who, what, when, where, and why.
    - (2) Situational analysis and course of action (COAs) development.
      - (a) Company commander determines one or more ways to achieve the mission.
      - (b) Analyze relative combat power.
      - (c) Generate options.
      - (d) Array company's initial forces.
      - (e) Develop schemes of maneuver.
      - (f) Assign headquarters.
    - (3) Analysis of each course of action (COAs).
      - (a) Determine advantages and disadvantages.
      - (b) Visualize the flow of battle.
    - (4) Comparison of each course of action (COAs).
      - (a) Does the course of action (COAs) accomplish the company purpose?
      - (b) Makes a decision on which course of action (COAs) will be used. (The decision represents the tentative plan.)

- \* 5. Company commander initiates movement in accordance with (IAW) the warning order (WARNO), or operation order (OPORD), or fragmentary order (FRAGO) and or unit tactical standing operating tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). (There may be a need to initiate movement immediately following the issuance of the warning order (WARNO.)
  - a. Establishes movement control through the use of waypoints and or graphic control, measures.
  - b. Assumes the appropriate readiness condition (REDCON) level.
  - c. Dispatches quartering party as necessary.
  - d. Begins priorities of work.
  - e. Conducts time-distance check of the route to the start point (SP), as necessary.
  - f. Prepares reconnaissance element(s) for movement.

- \* 6. Company commander conducts reconnaissance.

<p>a. Coordinates with organizations that his reconnaissance elements will pass through or near.</p> <p>b. Completes a personal reconnaissance when time allows.</p> <p>c. Completes a map reconnaissance when time does not allow a personal recon.</p> <p>d. Requests reconnaissance assets conduct the recon, if the risk of enemy contact is high.</p> <p>* 7. Company commander completes the plan.</p> <p>a. Adjusts the plan based on results of the reconnaissance.</p> <p>b. Ensures the plan meets the requirements of the mission and the commander's intent.</p> <p>* 8. Company commander issues the order.</p> <p>a. Ensures subordinates understand mission, commander's intent, concept of the operation and their assigned tasks.</p> <p>b. Issues the order within sight of the objective or on defensive terrain. (When this is not possible, a terrain model or sketch should be used.)</p> <p>* 9. Company commander supervises preparations and refines the order.</p> <p>a. Conducts a rehearsal.</p> <p>b. Conducts inspections.</p>		
--	--	--

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

**Task Title**

Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (Infantry Company)

Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Company)

Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Company)

## TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINE

**TASK:** Establish Communications (Infantry Company) (07-2-5090)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is conducting operations as part of a larger force. The company has moved to an assembly area or other location that requires them to establish communications to provide information exchange between company elements, higher headquarters, and fire support elements. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The signal annex to the operation order (OPORD) is available. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company establishes communications in accordance with (IAW) the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), order, and or higher commander's guidance. The company prepares communication systems for operation. The company establishes and enters appropriate communication nets. Company performs remedial electronic counter countermeasures (ECCM). The company maintains communications and communications security.

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO GO</b>
<p>* 1. Company leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using information that is gathered from maps, intelligence summaries, situations reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p>* 2. Company commander and or first sergeant (1SG) locate radio stations (primary and alternate) some distance from the company headquarters or command post.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Allow for effective use of terrain in an electronic warfare environment.</li> <li>b. Avoid frequency interference from power lines and other friendly sources.</li> <li>c. Provide physical security from attack.</li> <li>d. Provide the best possible cover and concealment consistent with reliable transmission and reception of required stations.</li> </ul> <p>3. Company prepares the communication systems for operation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures that equipment is initialized and operating in accordance with (IAW) tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP) and applicable manuals.</li> <li>b. Installs required antenna.</li> <li>c. Sets assigned frequency(s).</li> <li>d. Makes required settings.</li> <li>e. Programs equipment for secure operations using key list or appropriate keying devices, if applicable.</li> <li>f. Checks all system components for operational abilities.</li> </ul>		

g. Provides security for communications security (COMSEC) items.

4. Company operates the company net control station (NCS) using wire, or radio.

- a. Opens nets in accordance with (IAW) current Signal Operating Instructions (SOI)/Signal Supplemental Instructions (SSI).
- b. Challenges all stations in net as required by the signal operating instructions (SOI) and or signal supplemental instructions (SSI).
- c. Controls entry and departure of all stations.
- d. Monitors the net for operability and connectivity, if applicable.
- e. Reports loss and or operating difficulties of any station to the chain of command and higher headquarters (HQ) communications element.
- f. Enforces station and net restrictions.
- g. Monitors the net to detect errors in operating procedures.
- h. Corrects all errors in net operating procedures.
- i. Enforces station listening silence as prescribed by or commander's directive.
- j. Completes transition to extend range of radio station within 15 minutes, if required.
- k. Remotes radio station at least one kilometer, if required.
- l. Directs change to alternate frequency when compromise of primary frequency is suspected.
- m. Closes net in accordance with (IAW) the signal operating instructions (SOI)/ signal supplemental instructions (SSI).

5. Company enters higher headquarters and fire support nets as required.

6. Company transmits and receives messages over and radio nets using the correct format and procedures.

- a. Processes messages by precedence, date/time group, and in accordance with (IAW) the tactical standing operating instructions (TSOP).
- b. Processes incoming messages without errors.
- c. Forwards incoming messages to appropriate element/section.
- d. Check outgoing messages for completeness and readability.
- e. Employ approved radiotelephone procedures.
- f. Transmit messages in accordance with (IAW) precedence, correct format, and prescribed text.
- g. Employ approved codes and brevity lists when transmitting the names of persons, places, and sensitive information.
- h. Encode all grid coordinates using the current signal operating instructions (SOI)/signal supplemental instructions (SSI).
- i. Decode all grid coordinates using the current signal operating instructions (SOI)/signal supplemental instructions (SSI).
- j. Employ lowest operational power setting consistent with operations requirements.
- k. Maintain station log.
- l. Troubleshoot radio set as necessary and within operator's capability.
- m. Correct faults (within operator's capability).
- n. Report uncorrectable faults to higher headquarters for resolution.

<p>7. Company maintains radio communications.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintains communications using between the unit command post (CP) and all sub-elements.</li> <li>b. Maintains communications with higher headquarters (HQ) and all supported unit elements using radio, or messenger.</li> <li>c. Notifies higher headquarter's when communications are partially or completely inoperative.</li> </ul> <p>8. Company maintains land communications.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintains wire communications between the company command post (CP) and all sub elements.</li> <li>b. Maintains a hot loop between the company command post (CP) and sub-elements, if switchboard is not available.</li> <li>c. Establishes messenger runners when land communications are inoperative.</li> </ul> <p>9. Company maintains generator power.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Operates generators in accordance with (IAW) appropriate Technical Manuals (TMs).</li> <li>b. Constructs sound barrier and screening system to muffle noise and minimize heat signature.</li> <li>c. Constructs a fuel storage and fire control point for all generators with fire extinguishers as prescribed by the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP) and commander's guidance.</li> </ul> <p>10. Company employs signal security (SIGSEC) measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Employs communication security (COMSEC) measures to deny friendly telecommunication information to the enemy.</li> <li>b. Employs electronic security (ELSEC) measures to protect electromagnetic transmissions, other than communication devices, from threat detection.</li> </ul>		
--	--	--

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

## **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

### **Task Title**

Communicate on a Tactical Radio

Determine Call Signs, Frequencies, and Item Numbers

Employ a Numeral Cipher Authentication System

USE AN AUTOMATED SIGNAL OPERATION INSTRUCTION (SOI)

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

## TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINE

**TASK:** Conduct Demolition Guard Mission (Infantry Company) (07-2-1288)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is conducting operations as part of a larger force and has received an operation order (OPORD)/fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a demolition guard mission at the location and time specified. An engineer platoon is attached to the company with sufficient quantities of demolition materials and is augmented with additional maneuver or combat support (CS) assets as required. (The company commander is designated as the demolition guard commander and the engineer platoon leader is designated as the firing party commander). All necessary company personnel and equipment is available. The company has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The company has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company conducts the demolition guard mission in accordance with tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and or higher commander's guidance. The company defends the target to allow all friendly forces to withdraw or until ordered to execute the target. The company executes the target on order. The company complies with the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO GO</b>
<p>* 1. Demolition guard commander gains and or maintains situational understanding using information that is gathered from maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p>* 2. Demolition guard commander receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) and issues warning order (WARNO) to the company using radio, or other tactical means.</p> <p>* 3. Demolition guard commander plans using troop-leading procedures.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Conducts mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civilian considerations (METT-TC) analysis.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(1) Considers the enemy's capabilities, likely courses of action (COAs), and specific weapons capabilities.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Conducts a map reconnaissance.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(1) Identifies target.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(2) Identifies tentative objective rally point (ORP).</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(3) Identifies tentative security, support by fire, and assault positions.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(4) Identifies likely enemy avenues of approach.</p>		

<p>(5) Identifies routes to and from the objective rally point (ORP) and objective.</p> <p>(6) Identifies tentative observation post(s) (OP).</p> <p>(7) Marks contact points, rally points, and other control measures.</p> <p>(8) Marks tentative dismount points on maps as appropriate.</p> <p>c. Coordinates the demolition guard mission.</p> <p>(1) Compares orders with the demolition firing party to ensure they are correct and complete.</p> <p>(2) Exchanges information with adjacent commanders on observation post (OP) locations, patrols, unit signals, enemy routes into the area, terrain and facilities available in the area, and passage points.</p> <p>(3) Becomes familiar with the information in the firing commander's target folder.</p> <p>(4) Places recovery and evacuation assets near and on the friendly side of the target to assist in keeping the route clear, if applicable.</p> <p>(5) Prepares a chain-of-command roster for his unit.</p> <p>d. Plans and coordinates indirect fire support and or close air support, if available.</p> <p>(1) Plans fires on the target, on both sides of it, and surrounding area.</p> <p>(2) Plans for illumination and smoke.</p> <p>e. Identifies direct fire responsibilities.</p> <p>f. Plans and coordinates combat service support (CSS).</p> <p>g. Organizes the company as necessary to accomplish the mission and or compensate for combat losses.</p> <p>(1) Incorporates any attached elements into guard plan.</p> <p>h. Coordinates and synchronizes activities within each battlefield operating system (BOS).</p> <p>i. Plans for observation posts (Ops) and patrols in order to provide an early warning of an enemy attack.</p> <p>j. Plans for the control of withdrawing units and refugees.</p> <p>k. Establishes contact points on the enemy side of the target to monitor, control, and inform the commander on the passage of friendly units.</p> <p>l. Addresses actions on chance contact with the enemy.</p> <p>*4. Demolition guard commander disseminates reports overlays, and other pertinent information to each element to keep them abreast of the situation.</p> <p>*5. Demolition guard commander issues orders and instructions to include rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).</p> <p>a. Issues specific and clear taskings to platoons/elements.</p> <p>6. Company conducts a rehearsal.</p> <p>a. Rehearses plan during the day and at night, if possible.</p> <p>*7. Demolition guard commander issues a fragmentary order (FRAGO), as necessary, to address changes to the plan identified during the rehearsal.</p>		
---	--	--

- |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|
| <p>8. Company moves tactically to objective rally point (ORP).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Secures objective rally point (ORP).</li> </ul> <p>*9. Demolition guard commander or designated representative and reconnaissance element conducts the reconnaissance based on mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time and civil considerations (METT-TC).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducts a passage of lines, if required.</li> <li>b. Pinpoints the target.</li> <li>c. Establishes security at the target.</li> <li>d. Selects security, support, and assault positions.</li> <li>e. Establishes contact points on the enemy side of the target to monitor, control, and inform the commander on the passage of friendly units.</li> <li>f. Determines the locations of all landing zones (LZs) and or pickup zones (PZs) in the area.</li> <li>g. Identifies areas on the enemy and the friendly sides of the target that can be used as holding areas for units and refugees.</li> <li>h. Identifies passage lanes through target.</li> <li>i. Selects primary and alternate locations for the firing point.</li> <li>j. Selects a primary and an alternate command post (CP) location on the friendly side of the target that allows him to observe and control the defense.</li> <li>k. Verifies and updates intelligence information.</li> <li>l. Leaves a surveillance team to observe the objective.</li> <li>m. Returns to the objective rally point (ORP).</li> </ul> <p>10. Company elements move to and occupy designated positions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Secures positions as required.</li> <li>b. Improves positions as the situation allows.</li> <li>c. Positions elements to provide an all around defense. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Positions one element on the enemy side of the target to occupy roadblocks on the avenues of approach leading to the area.</li> <li>(2) Positions another element on and around the target to defend it and the demolitions.</li> <li>(3) Positions any remaining elements on the friendly side of the target in locations where they can support the defending platoon.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>11. Company conducts the demolition guard mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Emplaces mines and obstacles in accordance with (IAW) the commander's plan to disrupt and block enemy movement.</li> <li>b. Marks all routes through the passage lane.</li> <li>c. Defends the target.</li> <li>d. Controls the flow of vehicles and personnel to ensure the target does not become congested.</li> <li>e. Moves units and refugees to designated holding areas to prevent massing at or near the target.</li> </ul> <p>* 12. Demolition guard commander directs the demolition of the target upon receipt of the order.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Notifies the firing party commander on receipt of the order.</li> </ul> |  |  |
|--|--|--|

<p>b. Warns friendly units in the area of imminent detonation.  c. Withdraws elements to the friendly side of the target before detonation. (The commander may leave some elements on the enemy side until after detonation. These elements may be required to continue to provide security or to complete some of the final demolition tasks. The commander must have developed a plan to withdraw elements remaining on the enemy side of the target after detonation.)  d. Gives the order to fire to the firing party commander.  e. Executes misfire procedures if the demolitions fail to fire.  f. Completes necessary paperwork when the situation allows.</p> <p>13. Company consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.</p> <p>14. Company secures enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.</p> <p>* 15. Demolition guard commander inspects the target to ensure it is completely destroyed.</p> <p>* 16. Demolition guard commander reports the completion of the mission to higher headquarters.</p> <p>17. Company treats and evacuates casualties.</p> <p>18. Company processes captured documents and or equipment as required.</p> <p>19. Company continues operations as directed.</p>		
--	--	--

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK</b>						
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES EVALUATED						
TOTAL TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES "GO"						

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

## **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

### **SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

#### **Task Title**

Conduct Tactical Movement (Infantry Company)  
Employ Obstacle(s) (Infantry Company)  
Conduct an Area or Zone Reconnaissance (Infantry Company)  
Report Tactical Information (Infantry Company)  
Integrate Direct Fires (Infantry Company)  
Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Infantry Company)  
Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Infantry Company)  
Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry Company)  
Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Antiarmor/Infantry Company)  
Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Company)  
Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Infantry Company)  
Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Company)  
Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry Company)  
Prepare for Combat (Infantry Company)  
Maintain Operations Security (Infantry Company)

## Questionnaire and Request for Feedback

This is a coordinating draft of Infantry Rifle Company final approved ANA Doctrine. The intent is for units in the field to use this coordinating draft to confirm or void the tasks, task steps, and performance measures then provide feedback for the final doctrinal manuals. Be as specific as possible when providing feedback and let us know how to contact you so we can clarify any questions we may have regarding your suggestions.

Forward your feedback to [milpribroadwater@aol.com](mailto:milpribroadwater@aol.com). Feel free to respond to any of the questions below or shoot from the hip and let us know something we have overlooked.

1. Training and Evaluation Outlines
  - a. Does each of these tasks apply to the ANA Infantry Rifle Company?
  - b. Are additional training and evaluation outlines (T&EO's) needed?
2. Task Steps and Performance Measures.
  - a. Which task steps do not apply for ANA units?
  - b. What additional task steps are required to successfully accomplish the tasks?
  - c. Do the task steps make sense; are they understandable?



## GLOSSARY

AAR	after-action review
ADA	air defense artillery
AMB	ambush
ARTEP	army training and evaluation program
AT	antitank
ATGM	antitank guided missile
ATK	attack
BOS	battlefield operating system
C2	command and control
CAS	close air support
COMMEX	communications exercise
CP	command post
CPT	captain
CS	combat support
CSM	command sergeant major
CSR	controlled supply rate
CSS	combat service support
DEF	defend
DZ	drop zone
ENDEX	end of exercise
EPW	enemy prisoners of war
1LT	first lieutenant
1SG	first sergeant
FASCAM	family of scatterable mines
FDC	fire direction center
FIST	fire support team
FM	field manual
FO	forward observer
FPF	final protective fires
FRAGO	fragmentary order
FSO	fire support officer
FTX	field training exercise
GS	general support
HE	high explosive
IAW	in accordance with
INTSUM	intelligence summary
IR	intelligence requirements
KIA	killed in action
LAW	light antitank weapon

LD line of departure  
 LOC lines of communication  
 LOS line of sight  
 LTC lieutenant colonel  
 LZ landing zone  
  
 MAPEX map exercise  
 MEDEVAC Medical evacuation  
  
 METL mission-essential task list  
 METT- mission, enemy, terrain, troops and time  
 T available  
 MM millimeter  
 MOUT military operations on urbanized terrain  
 MRE meal, ready-to-eat  
 MSD minimum safe distance  
 MTC movement to contact  
 MTOE modified table of organization and equipment  
 MTP mission training plan  
 NAI named areas of interest  
 NCO noncommissioned officer  
 NLT not later than  
  
 NVD night vision device  
  
 OAKOC obstacles and movement, avenues of approach,  
 key terrain, observation and fields of fire, cover  
 and concealment  
  
 OP observation point  
  
 OPCON operational control  
  
 OPFOR opposing force  
  
 OPORD operations order  
  
  
  
  
 OPSEC operations security  
  
 ORP objective rally point  
  
 PIR priority intelligence requirements  
  
 PMCS preventative maintenance checks and services  
 PSG platoon sergeant

PSYOP psychological operations

PZ pick-up zone (for helicopters)

R&S reconnaissance and surveillance

ROE rules of engagement

RP release point

2LT second lieutenant

SITREP situation report

SOP standard operating procedures

STX situational training exercise

T&EO training and evaluation exercise

TAI targeted area of interest

TEWT tactical exercise without troops

TOC tactical operations center

TOT time on target